CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION

Although organic substances such as sugar, starch, alcohol, resins, oils, indigo, etc., had been known from earliest times, very little progress in their chemistry was made until about the beginning of the eighteenth century. In 1675, Lemery published his famous Cours de Chymie, in which he divided compounds from natural sources into three classes: mineral, vegetable and This classification was accepted very quickly, but it was Lavoisier who first showed, in 1784, that all compounds obtained from vegetable and animal sources always contained at least carbon and hydrogen, and frequently, nitrogen and phosphorus. Lavoisier, in spite of showing this close relationship between vegetable and animal products, still retained Lemery's classification. Lavoisier's analytical work, however, stimulated further research in this direction, and resulted in much-improved technique, due to which Lemery's classification had to be modified. Lemery had based his classification on the origin of the compound, but it was now found (undoubtedly due to the improved analytical methods) that in a number of cases the same compound could be obtained from both vegetable and animal Thus no difference existed between these two classes of compounds, and hence it was no longer justifiable to consider them under separate headings. This led to the reclassification of substances into two groups: all those which could be obtained from vegetables or animals, i.e., substances that were produced by the living organism, were classified as organic; and all those substances which were not prepared from the living organism were classified as inorganic.

At this stage of the investigation of organic compounds it appeared that there were definite differences between organic and inorganic compounds, e.g., complexity of composition and the combustibility of the former. Berzelius (1815) thought that organic compounds were produced from their elements by laws different from those governing the formation of inorganic compounds. This then led him to believe that organic compounds were produced under the influence of a vital force, and that they could not be

prepared artificially.

In 1828, Wöhler converted ammonium cyanate into urea, a substance hitherto obtained only from animal sources. This synthesis weakened the distinction between organic and inorganic compounds, and this distinction was completely ended with the synthesis of acetic acid from its elements by Kolbe in 1845, and the synthesis of methane by Berthelot in 1856. common belief appears to be that Wöhler's synthesis had little effect on the vital-force theory because it did not start with the elements. Wöhler had prepared his ammonium cyanate from ammonia and cyanic acid, both of which were of animal origin. Partington (1960), however, has pointed out that Priestley (1781) had obtained ammonia by reduction of nitric acid, which was later synthesised from its elements by Cavendish (1785). potassium cyanide was obtained by Scheele (1783) by passing nitrogen over a strongly heated mixture of potassium carbonate and carbon, and since one form of carbon used was graphite, this reaction was therefore carried out with inorganic materials. Since potassium cyanide is readily converted into potassium cyanate, Wöhler's synthesis is one which starts from the elements.

Since the supposed differences between the two classes of compounds have been disproved, the terms organic and inorganic would appear to be no longer necessary. Nevertheless, they have been retained, but it should be appreciated that they have lost their original meaning. The retention of the terms organic and inorganic may be ascribed to several reasons: (i) all so-called organic compounds contain carbon; (ii) the compounds of carbon are far more numerous (over 750,000) than the known compounds of all the other elements put together; (iii) carbon has the power to combine with other carbon atoms to form long chains. This property, known as catenation, is not shown to such an extent by any other element.

Hence organic chemistry is the chemistry of the carbon compounds.

This definition includes compounds such as carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, carbonates, carbon disulphide, etc. Since these occur chiefly in the inorganic kingdom (original meaning), they are usually described in text-books of inorganic chemistry.

ANALYSIS OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

The following is an outline of the methods used in the study of organic compounds.

- (1) Purification. Before the properties and structure of an organic compound can be completely investigated, the compound must be prepared in the pure state. Common methods of purification are:
 - (i) Recrystallisation from suitable solvents.
- (ii) Distillation: (a) at atmospheric pressure; (b) under reduced pressure or in vacuo; (c) under increased pressure.
 - (iii) Steam distillation.(iv) Sublimation.
- (v) Chromatography. This method is based on the differential adsorption of the different components of a mixture on various adsorbents. Chromatography offers a means of concentrating a product that occurs naturally in great dilution, and is an extremely valuable method for the separation, isolation, purification and identification of the constituents of a mixture.

It is surprising how much information has often been obtained about the properties and structure of a substance that has not been isolated in a pure state. Even so, purification should always be attempted, since it is much simpler to investigate a pure substance than an impure one.

- (2) Qualitative analysis. The elements commonly found in organic substances are: carbon (always: by definition), hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, halogens, sulphur, phosphorus and metals.
- (i) Carbon and hydrogen. The compound is intimately mixed with dry cupric oxide and the mixture then heated in a tube. Carbon is oxidised to carbon dioxide (detected by means of calcium hydroxide solution), and hydrogen is oxidised to water (detected by condensation on the cooler parts of the tube).

(ii) Nitrogen, halogens and sulphur. These are all detected by the Lassaigne method. The compound is fused with metallic sodium, whereby nitrogen is converted into sodium cyanide, halogen into sodium halide, and sulphur into sodium sulphide. The presence of these sodium salts is then detected by inorganic qualitative methods.

(iii) Phosphorus. The compound is heated with fusion mixture, whereby the phosphorus is converted into metallic phosphate, which is then detected by the usual inorganic tests.

(iv) **Metals.** When organic compounds containing metals are strongly heated, the organic part usually burns away, leaving behind a residue. This residue is usually the oxide of the metal, but in certain cases it may be the free metal, e.g., silver, or the carbonate, e.g., sodium carbonate.

As a rule, no attempt is made to carry out any test for oxygen: its presence is usually inferred from the chemical properties of the compound.

The non-metallic elements which occur in *natural* organic compounds, in order of decreasing occurrence, are hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulphur, phosphorus, iodine, bromine and chlorine. Halogen compounds are essentially synthetic compounds, and are not found to any extent naturally. Some important exceptions are chloramphenicol (chlorine), Tyrian Purple (bromine) and thyroxine (iodine). In addition to these non-metallic elements, various metallic elements occur in combination with natural organic compounds, *e.g.*, sodium, potassium, calcium, iron, magnesium, copper.

- (3) Quantitative analysis. The methods used in the determination of the composition by weight of an organic compound are based on simple principles.
- (i) Carbon and hydrogen are estimated by burning a known weight of the substance in a current of dry oxygen, and weighing the carbon dioxide and water formed. If elements (non-metallic) other than carbon, hydrogen and oxygen are present, special precautions must be taken to prevent their interfering with the estimation of the carbon and hydrogen.

(ii) Nitrogen may be estimated in several ways, but only two are commonly

usèd.

(a) Dumas' method. This consists in oxidising the compound with copper oxide, and measuring the volume of nitrogen formed. This method is

applicable to all organic compounds containing nitrogen.

(b) **Kjeldahl's method.** This depends on the fact that when organic compounds containing nitrogen are heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, the organic nitrogen is converted into ammonium sulphate. This method, however, has certain limitations.

(iii) **Halogens** may be estimated in several ways. One is the classical method of *Carius*. The substance is heated in a sealed tube with fuming nitric acid in the presence of silver nitrate. Silver halide is formed, and this is estimated gravimetrically.

A simpler method for *non-volatile* compounds is to fuse the substance with sodium peroxide in a nickel crucible, whereupon the halogen is converted into sodium halide, which is then estimated as before.

(iv) Sulphur may be estimated by the methods used for the halogens. In the Carius method for sulphur, no silver nitrate is used. Organic sulphur is converted into sulphuric acid (Carius method) or sodium sulphate (sodium peroxide fusion). In both cases the sulphate is precipitated as barium sulphate and weighed.

(v) Phosphorus may be estimated by heating the compound with fusion

mixture and weighing the phosphate as magnesium pyrophosphate.

The Carius determination (no silver nitrate used, cf. sulphur) invariably gives low results for phosphorus. Olivier (1940) found that exact results were obtained by heating the organic compound mixed with calcium oxide in a stream of oxygen. The phosphate was then estimated as above.

(vi) Oxygen is usually estimated by difference. All direct methods are still not completely satisfactory, but recently Aluise and co-workers (1947) claim to have evolved a satisfactory technique. The organic compound is subjected to pyrolysis in a stream of nitrogen, and all the oxygen in the pyrolysis products is converted into carbon monoxide by passage over

carbon heated at 1120°. The carbon monoxide is then passed over iodine pentoxide, and the iodine liberated is estimated titrimetrically.

Quantitative analysis falls into three groups according to the amount of material used for the estimation:

(i) Macro-methods which require about o.r.-o.5 g. of material (actual amount depends on the element being estimated).

(ii) Semi-micro methods which require 20-50 mg. of material.

(iii) Micro-methods which require 3-5 mg. of material.

Nowadays the tendency is to use method (ii) or (iii). Although all the methods are simple in theory, their successful application (particularly when using micro- or semi-micro methods) requires a great deal of technical skill. These methods have become standardised, and are described in detail in many books on practical organic chemistry. Improvements and new methods for analysis, however, are always being published; e.g., chlorine and sulphur may be determined by wrapping the sample of the compound in filter paper, igniting and lowering it into a flask filled with oxygen. The acid gases are absorbed in hydrogen peroxide; the sulphuric acid formed is titrated with standard alkali, and the chloride is determined by titrating the neutralised solution with mercuric nitrate (Mikl et al., 1953). Fluorine, chlorine and nitrogen may be determined by decomposition in a nickel bomb (Brown et al., 1955).

- (4) **Empirical formula determination.** The empirical formula indicates the *relative numbers* of each kind of atom in the molecule, and is calculated from the percentage composition of the compound.
- (5) Molecular weight determination. The molecular formula—this gives the actual number of atoms of each kind in the molecule—is obtained by multiplying the empirical formula by some whole number which is obtained from consideration of the molecular weight of the compound. In many cases this whole number is one.

The methods used for the determination of molecular weights fall into two main groups: physical and chemical. The standard physical methods are the determination of: (i) vapour density; (ii) elevation of boiling point; (iii) depression of freezing point. These methods are described fully in text-books of physical chemistry. In addition to these standard methods, which are used mainly for relatively simple molecules, there are also other physical methods used for compounds having high molecular weights, e.g., rate of diffusion, rate of sedimentation, viscosity of the solution, osmotic pressure, etc.

The chemical methods, since they are only useful in organic work, will be here described in detail.

(i) Molecular weights of organic acids (method of silver salt). If the basicity of the acid is known, then the molecular weight of that acid may be determined from the analysis of its silver salt. The silver salt is chosen because: (a) Most silver salts are insoluble in water, and hence they are readily prepared. (b) Most silver salts are anhydrous; this is a definite advantage, since it does not introduce a possible source of error (i.e., the determination of water of crystallisation). (c) All silver salts are readily decomposed on ignition, leaving a residue of metallic silver.

The method of calculation is shown in the following example: 0.701 g. of the silver salt of a dibasic acid on ignition yielded 0.497 g. of metallic silver. Calculate the M.Wt. of the acid, given that the A.Wt. of silver is 108.

Since the acid is dibasic, its molecule can be represented by the formula H_2A , where A is that part of the molecule other than replaceable hydrogen atoms. Hence the silver salt will be Ag_2A , *i.e.*, one gram molecule of it contains 216 g. of silver.

There is 0.497 g. silver in 0.701 g. of Ag₂A.

: there is 216 g. silver in $\frac{0.701 \times 216}{0.497}$ g. of Ag₂A = 304.7 g.

i.e., the M.Wt. of Ag₂A is 304.7.

- : the M.Wt. of acid H_2A is $(Ag_2A 2Ag + 2H) = (304.7 216 + 2) = 90.7$.
- (ii) Molecular weights of organic bases (method of chloroplatinate). Organic bases combine with chloroplatinic acid, H_2PtCl_6 , to form insoluble, anhydrous chloroplatinates (platinichlorides) which, on ignition, leave a residue of metallic platinum. Let B represent one molecule of the base. If it is a "monoacid" base, the formula of its chloroplatinate will be $B_2H_2PtCl_6$; if a "diacid" base, BH_2PtCl_6 .

EXAMPLE. 0.800 g. of the chloroplatinate of a "monoacid" base on ignition gave 0.262 g. of platinum. Calculate the M.Wt. of the base, given that the A.Wt. of platinum is 105.

A.Wt. of platinum is 195.

Since the base is "monoacid", the formula of its chloroplatinate will be B₂H₂PtCl₆, *i.e.*, one gram molecule of the chloroplatinate contains 195 g. of platinum.

There is 0.262 g. of platinum in 0.800 g. of B2H2PtCl6.

- : there is 195 g. of platinum in $\frac{0.800 \times 195}{0.262} = 595.4$ g. of $B_2H_2PtCl_6$.
- i.e., the M.Wt. of B2H2PtCl6 is 595.4.
 - : the M.Wt. of B is

$$\frac{B_2H_2PtCl_6 - H_2PtCl_6}{2} = \frac{595\cdot 4 - (2 + 195 + 213)}{2} = 92\cdot 7.$$

(iii) The molecular formula of any gaseous hydrocarbon (compound containing carbon and hydrogen only) may be determined by exploding a measured volume of the gas with a measured excess of oxygen, in a eudiometer tube.

EXAMPLE. 10 ml. of a gaseous hydrocarbon was mixed with 80 ml. of oxygen and the mixture exploded. 70 ml. of gas remained (after cooling to room temperature), and this was reduced to 50 ml. (of oxygen) after treatment with potassium hydroxide solution. What is the formula of the hydrocarbon?

There are two ways of solving this problem:

$$C + O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2.$$

Thus one atom of carbon requires one molecule of oxygen.

$$2H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2H_2O$$
.

Thus one atom of hydrogen requires $\frac{1}{4}$ molecule of oxygen. Let the formula of the hydrocarbon be C_xH_y . Then x molecules of oxygen will be required to burn the carbon to carbon dioxide, and $\frac{y}{4}$ molecules of oxygen to burn the hydrogen to water. Thus we have

$$C_xH_y + \left(x + \frac{y}{4}\right)O_2 \longrightarrow xCO_2 + \frac{y}{2}H_2O$$
 . . . (i)

From Avogadro's law, it follows that

I vol. of
$$C_zH_y + \left(x + \frac{y}{4}\right)$$
 vol. of $O_2 \longrightarrow x$ vol. $CO_2 + \frac{y}{2}$ vol. H_2O (as steam) (ii)

Since measurements of volume are carried out at room temperature, the water will be present as liquid, the volume of which may be ignored. Therefore, contraction after sparking $= \left(\mathbf{I} + x + \frac{y}{4}\right) - x = \left(\mathbf{I} + \frac{y}{4}\right)$ vol.

After treatment with potassium hydroxide solution, the contraction will be vol. (i.e., vol. of CO₂).

From the figures of the experiment, we have

First contraction
$$= 90 - 70 = 20$$
 ml.
Second contraction $= 70 - 50 = 20$ ml.

- : since 10 ml. of $C_x H_y$ is to be taken as 1 vol. (from equation ii), then $1 + \frac{y}{\lambda} = 2$.
- $\therefore y = 4 \text{ and } x = 2.$

Hence the hydrocarbon is C_2H_4 .

(b) Total amount of oxygen used = 80 - 50 = 30 ml.

Of this, 20 ml. was required for burning the carbon (vol. of CO₂ is equal to vol. of O₂ used). Hence 10 ml. was required for the hydrogen which gives 20 ml. of steam.

- \therefore 10 ml. $C_xH_y + 30$ ml. $O_2 \longrightarrow 20$ ml. $CO_2 + 20$ ml. H_2O (steam).
- ... from Avogadro's law

$$C_xH_y + 3O_2 \longrightarrow 2CO_2 + 2H_2O.$$

- $\therefore x = 2, y = 4$; and the hydrocarbon is C_2H_4 .
- (6) **Determination of structure**, *i.e.*, the manner in which the atoms are arranged in the molecule. The usual procedure for elucidating the structure of an unknown compound is to make a detailed study of its chemical reactions. This procedure is known as the *analytical method*, and includes breaking down (*degrading*) the compound into smaller molecules of *known* structure.

In addition to the purely chemical means, there are also various physical properties which are used to elucidate structure, e.g.:

(i) Dipole moment. This gives information on the spatial arrangement of atoms in a molecule, and so offers a means of distinguishing between alternative arrangements.

(ii) Refractive index. This may be used to distinguish between two types of

structure, e.g., between a keto and an enol form.

(iii) Parachor. This has been used to distinguish between alternative structures.

(iv) X-Ray analysis. This offers a means of studying the arrangement of atoms in crystalline solids, but it may also be used for liquids and gases. Since most organic compounds are complex from the point of view of structure, X-ray analysis has mainly been used to "round off" information obtained by purely chemical means. Bond lengths may be measured by X-ray analysis, and deviations from "normal" values give information on structure.

(v) Electron diffraction. This has been used in the same way as X-ray analysis, and is applicable to gases, liquid and solids. It is, however, usually confined to

gases or compounds in the vapour state.

(vi) Absorption spectra. All organic compounds absorb light, which may be in one or more of the following regions: infra-red, visible or ultra-violet. Many bands are associated with particular groups, and it is therefore possible to ascertain the presence of these various groups in a new compound. In general, compounds possessing similar structures show similar absorption spectra. Hence the structure of a new compound may be elucidated by comparing its absorption spectrum with known spectra.

The Raman effect also is characteristic of a particular group, and has been widely used to ascertain the nature of the groups present in a compound.

When sufficient evidence has been accumulated, a tentative structure which best fits the facts is accepted. Sometimes two (or even more) structures fit the facts almost equally well, and it has been shown in certain cases that the compound exists in both forms which are in equilibrium. This phenomenon is known as tautomerism. Where tautomerism has not been

shown to be present, one must accept (with reserve) the structure that has been chosen (see also next section).

(7) Synthesis of the compound. The term synthesis means the building up of a compound, step by step, from a simpler substance of known structure.

The term complete synthesis means the building up of a compound, step by step, starting from its elements (and any others that may be necessary). In either case (synthesis or complete synthesis), the structure of each intermediate compound is taken as proved by its synthesis from the compound that preceded it.

The synthesis of a compound is necessary to establish its structure beyond doubt. There is always the possibility of one or more steps not proceeding "according to plan". Hence the larger the number of syntheses of a compound by different routes, the more reliable will be the structure assigned to that compound.

STRUCTURAL FORMULÆ AND ISOMERISM

In 1857, Kekulé postulated the constant quadrivalency (tetravalency) of carbon. From 1900 onwards, however, compounds containing tervalent carbon have been prepared, and their number is increasing rapidly. These compounds usually require special methods of preparation, and many have a very short life (see text). Since their properties are different from those compounds containing quadrivalent carbon, they are fairly easily recognised. More recently, compounds containing bivalent carbon (carbenes) are believed to be formed as intermediates during certain reactions. Hence, unless there is definite evidence to the contrary, carbon is always assumed to be quadrivalent.

If "valency units" or "valency bonds" (see Ch. II) are represented by lines, then the number of lines drawn from the symbol shows the valency of that atom, e.g.,

The molecular formula shows the number of each kind of atom present in the molecule, but does not indicate their arrangement. In organic chemistry there are many cases where a given formula represents two or more compounds that differ in physical and chemical properties, e.g., there are at least seven compounds having the same molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$. Such compounds, having the same molecular formula, but differing in physical and chemical properties, are known as isomers or isomerides, the phenomenon itself being known as isomerism. The existence of isomerism may be explained by assuming that the atoms are arranged in a definite manner in a molecule, and that there is a different arrangement in each isomer, i.e., the isomers differ in structure or constitution. This type of isomerism is known as structural isomerism.

Obviously, then, from what has been said above, it is always desirable to show the arrangement (if known) of the atoms in the molecule, and this is done by means of structural formulæ or bond-diagrams; e.g., the molecular

formula of ethanol is
$$C_2H_6O$$
; its structural formula is H — C — C — O — H .

So far nothing has been said about the *spatial* disposition of the four valencies of carbon. Later (Ch. II) it will be shown that when carbon is joined to four univalent atoms or groups, the four valencies are directed towards the four corners of a tetrahedron. Thus the above plane-structural

formula does not show the disposition of the atoms in space; a threedimensional formula is necessary for this. Usually the plane-formula is satisfactory. Since the actual spatial arrangements of a given structure may differ, this gives rise to isomerism of the type known as stereoisomerism. Stereoisomers have different configurations, i.e., the spatial arrangements are different but not their structures (see p. 399).

A structural formula is really a short-hand description of the properties of the compound. Hence the study of organic chemistry is facilitated by mastering the structural formula of every compound the reader meets. An organic molecule, however, is only completely described when the following facts are known: structure or constitution (this includes a knowledge of the electron distribution; see resonance, p. 17), configuration (p. 300), and conformation (p. 488).

SATURATED AND UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS

If, in an organic compound containing two or more carbon atoms, there are only single bonds linking any two adjacent carbon atoms, then that compound is said to be saturated, e.g., ethane, C₂H₆ (I), normal propanol, C₃H₈O (II), acetaldehyde, C₂H₄O (III).

On the other hand, if the compound contains at least one pair of adjacent carbon atoms linked by a multiple bond, then that compound is said to be unsaturated, e.g., ethylene, C_2H_4 (IV); this compound contains a double bond. Acetylene, C₂H₂ (V); this contains a triple bond. Acraldehyde, C₃H₄O (IV); this contains a double bond. The double bond between the carbon and oxygen atoms is not a sign of unsaturation (cf. acetaldehyde above).

CLASSIFICATION OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

Organic compounds are classified into three major groups:

(1) (a) Aliphatic, open-chain, or acyclic compounds.

(b) Alicyclic compounds. These are carbocyclic or ring compounds which resemble aliphatic compounds in many ways.

(2) Aromatic compounds. These are carbocyclic or ring compounds

containing at least one benzene ring (see also p. 509).

(3) Heterocyclic compounds. These are cyclic (ring) compounds containing other elements besides carbon in the ring. In a few cases no carbon atom is in the ring.

READING REFERENCES

Partington, A Short History of Chemistry, Macmillan (1957, 3rd ed.). Ch. X. The Beginnings of Organic Chemistry. Schorlemmer, The Rise and Development of Organic Chemistry, Macmillan (1894).

Japp, Kekulé Memorial Lecture, J.C.S., 1898, 73, 97.

Mann and Saunders, Practical Organic Chemistry, Longmans, Green (1960, 4th ed.).

Part IV. Quantitative Analysis.

Belcher and Godbert, Semi-Micro Quantitative Organic Analysis, Longmans, Green

(1954, 2nd ed.).

Pregl, Quantitative Organic Microanalysis, Churchill (1937). Vogel, Practical Organic Chemistry, Longmans, Green (1956, 3rd ed.), Ch. 12. Semimicro Technique.

Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1955, 52, 353. Classical Organic Analysis.
Ingram, The Rapid Micro-combustion Procedure, Chem. and Ind., 1956, 103.

CHAPTER II

STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM

According to modern theory, an atom consists of a nucleus which contains protons and neutrons, and which is surrounded by electrons. The mass of a proton is almost the same as that of a neutron, but whereas the proton carries a unit of positive charge, the neutron is electrically neutral. The electron has about $\frac{1}{1850}$ th of the mass of a proton, and carries a unit of negative charge. The electrons are arranged in shells around the nucleus, each shell being able to contain up to a maximum number of electrons, thismaximum depending on the number of the shell, n. n is known as the principal quantum number, and indicates the main energy level of the electrons in that shell. n has whole number values, 1, 2, 3, 4 . . ., the shells corresponding to which are also denoted by the letters K, L, M, N... respectively. In every principal quantum shell there are n energy sublevels, and these are indicated by l, the orbital quantum number (also known as the azimuthal or serial quantum number). Just as the principal quantum number n can have values 1, 2, 3 . . ., so can l have values 0, 1, 2, 3..., n-1. The energy state corresponding to l=0 is called the s state; l=1, the p state; l=2, the d state; etc. As we shall see later (p. 23), these s, p and d states are subdivided into a number of orbitals. total number of orbitals that a principal quantum shell can contain is given by n^2 . Thus, when the principal quantum number is I (i.e., the first or K shell), then l = 0, i.e., there is a single orbital in this K skell and is of the s type and is known as the is orbital. When n=2 (i.e., the second or L shell), then l=0 or I. This means there are two energy sublevels in the L shell. As pointed out above, the total number of orbitals in a given quantum shell is equal to n^2 . Thus, when n=2, there are four possible orbitals. When l=0, this corresponds to the 2s orbital. When l=1, then there are When n=3three equivalent orbitals; these are the three 2p orbitals. (i.e., the third or M shell), then the total number of possible orbitals is $9(3^2)$. These correspond to one 3s orbital (l = 0), three 3p orbitals (l = 1) and five 3d orbitals (l = 2). The existence of one s level, three p, five d and seven f levels of energy was used to explain the existence of spectral lines observed in the spectra of atoms and molecules. It should also be noted that the farther an electron is from the nucleus, the greater is its potential energy. Owing to the phenomenon of penetration of orbitals, i.e., outer electrons can penetrate into the shell of inner electrons, the energy level of an electron is thus not completely determined by its principal quantum number, but also depends on the orbital quantum number (i.e., on the shape of the orbital). Thus there is the following order of increasing energy: 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p . . . (see also p. 24).

In addition to the energy levels of an electron described by quantum numbers n and l, electrons have spin about their axis, some spinning in one direction and others in the opposite direction. This is indicated by the spin quantum number (s), and can have values of $+\frac{1}{2}$ and $-\frac{1}{2}$. Finally, an electron also has a magnetic quantum number (m), and this gives the allowed orientations of the orbitals in an external magnetic field. Thus an electron is

described by four quantum numbers, n, l, s and m.

By the fundamental *Pauli Exclusion Principle* (1925), no two electrons, in any system, can be assigned the same set of four quantum numbers. Hence there can be only *two* electrons in any one orbital, and these must be differentiated from each other by their spins, which *must* be *antiparallel*, *i.e.*, in the

opposite sense. Such electrons are said to be paired, and a pair of electrons with antiparallel spins in the same orbital is represented by the symbol $\psi \uparrow$. Since a moving charge is accompanied by a magnetic field, a spinning electron behaves as a small bar-magnet, and consequently two paired electrons will give a zero resultant magnetic field.

The hydrogen atom contents of one proton and one electron. When the hydrogen atom is in the "ground" state, i.e., the state of lowest energy, its electron will be in the lowest energy level, i.e., the 1s level, and is represented by (1s). When hydrogen is in an "excited" state, its electron will occupy a higher energy level, the actual level depending on the amount of

excitation ".

Helium has two electrons; hence its electron configuration in the ground state is represented as (1s)2. Lithium has three electrons. Since the maximum number of electrons in the K shell (n = 1, l = 0) is two, the third electron must start the L shell (n = 2, l = 0, 1). Electrons occupy lowest energy levels first. Thus this third electron occupies the 2s orbital, and not the 2p, because the 2p is a higher energy level than the 2s. Hence the electron configuration of lithium is $(1s)^2(2s)$. Thus the K shell is filled first. Then the electrons enter the L shell until that is filled. In this shell the s level is filled before the p. In fitting electrons into shells containing orbitals of equivalent energy, Hund's rules are used to assign the electrons to their orbitals. These rules are: (i) electrons tend to avoid being in the same orbital as far as possible; (ii) two electrons, each singly occupying a given pair of equivalent orbitals, tend to have their spins parallel when the atom is in the ground state. Thus carbon, with six electrons, may be represented as $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^2$. The K shell is filled first; the L shell is filled next, the 2s orbital being doubly filled before a higher level is used; then singly two of the 2p orbitals. Nitrogen, with seven electrons, is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^3$: all three 2p orbitals each contain one electron. Oxygen, with eight electrons, is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^4$: here one of the 2p orbitals is doubly filled.

THE ELECTRONIC THEORY OF VALENCY

The electronic theory of valency starts with the assumption that valency involves the electrons in the outer shells: in some cases only those in the highest sublevel in the outermost shell; in other cases those in the highest and penultimate sublevels, even though the penultimate sublevel may be in a lower quantum shell. Lewis (1916) assumed that the electron configuration in the rare gases was particularly stable (since these gases are chemically inert), and that chemical combination between atoms took place by achieving this configuration. The outermost shell of the rare gases always contains an octet of two s and six p electrons. Since both the s and p sublevels are completely filled, the octet will be a stable configuration. In the case of helium, however, an octet is impossible; here the stable arrangement is the duplet, the two 1s electrons of which completely fill the first quantum shell.

The octet rule applies only to atoms with 2s and 2p electrons, i.e., to elements in the second period (Li-F). With the other elements, d orbitals may also be used in bond formation, and hence higher covalencies (i.e., expansions beyond an octet) are possible, e.g., PBr₅ (10 electrons), SF₆ (12 electrons) and IF, (14 electrons). Since elements in period 2 have only 2s and

2p orbitals, the maximum covalency they can exhibit is 4.

Lewis also suggested that there was a definite tendency for electrons in a molecule to form pairs. This rule of 2, as we have seen, became established by the developments of quantum mechanics. There are few molecules that contain an odd number of valency electrons: where such odd electron

molecules do exist, unusual properties are found to be associated with them (see free radicals).

There are three general extreme types of chemical bonds: electrovalent, covalent and metallic bonds. In addition to these extreme types, there are

also bonds of intermediate types.

1. Electrovalency is manifested by the transfer of electrons, and gives rise to the *ionic* bond. Consider sodium chloride. Sodium is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)$: chlorine is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^5$. Sodium has completed K and L shells, and is starting the M shell with one electron. This electron (the 3s electron) is the valency electron of sodium. Chlorine has completed K and L shells, and has seven electrons in the M shell. These M electrons are the valency electrons of chlorine. If the sodium completely transfers its valency electron to the chlorine atom, then each atom will have eight electrons in its outermost shell, and this, as we have seen, is a stable arrangement. Since both atoms were originally electrically neutral, the sodium atom, in losing one electron, will now have a single positive charge, i.e., the neutral atom has become a positive ion. Similarly, the neutral chlorine atom, in gaining one electron, has become a negative ion. In the sodium chloride crystal these ions are held together by electrostatic forces. If the symbol of an element is used to represent the nucleus of an atom and all the electrons other than the valency electrons, and dots are used to represent the valency electrons, then the combination of the sodium and chlorine atoms to form sodium chloride may be represented as follows:

$$Na' + : Cl \cdot \longrightarrow Na : Cl :$$

2. Covalency. This type of bonding involves a sharing of electrons in pairs, each atom contributing one electron to form a shared pair, each pair of electrons having their spins antiparallel. This method of completing an octet (or any of the other possible values) gives rise to the covalent bond.

Hydrogen is usually *unicovalent*: occasionally it is unielectrovalent, *e.g.*, in sodium hydride, hydrogen exists as the hydride anion, formed by accepting an electron from the sodium:

$$Na' + H' \longrightarrow Na' H$$

Carbon almost invariably forms covalent compounds. The electron configuration of carbon is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^2$. Since the two 2s electrons are paired, it would appear that carbon is bivalent, only the two single 2p electrons being involved in compound formation. As pointed out previously, carbon is almost always quadrivalent; thus the 2s and 2p electrons must be involved. Just how these four electrons readjust themselves to give quadrivalent carbon will be described later; at this stage we shall assume it done, and write quadrivalent carbon as $\cdot \hat{\mathbf{C}} \cdot \mathbf{c}$.

In methane the four hydrogen atoms each contribute one electron and the carbon atom four electrons towards the formation of four shared pairs:

$$4H' + \cdot \dot{C} \cdot \longrightarrow H : C : H$$

Each hydrogen atom has its duplet (as in helium), and the carbon atom has an octet.

Each pair of shared electrons is equivalent to the ordinary "valency-bond", and so electronic formulæ are readily transformed into the usual structural formulæ, each bond representing a shared pair, e.g.,

From these examples it can be seen that there is a very important difference between an electronic formula and its equivalent structural formula. In the former, all valency electrons are shown whether they are used to form covalent bonds or not; in the latter, only those electrons which are actually used to form covalent bonds are indicated. This is a limitation of the usual structural formula. A widely used scheme is to represent structures with ordinary valency bonds and to indicate lone pairs by pairs of dots (see below).

3. Co-ordinate valency is a special type of covalency. Its distinguishing feature is that both of the shared electrons forming the bond are supplied by only one of the two atoms linked together, e.g., when ammonia combines with boron trifluoride to form a "molecular compound", it is the lone pair of the nitrogen atom that is involved in the formation of the new bond. In boron trifluoride, the boron has only six electrons in its valency shell; hence it can accommodate two more to complete its octet. Thus, if the nitrogen atom uses its lone pair, the combination of ammonia with boron trifluoride may be shown as:

$$\begin{array}{c} H : F : \\ H : N : + B : F : \longrightarrow H : N : B : F : \\ H : F : \end{array}$$

In the usual structural formula notation, a co-ordinate bond may be represented by an arrow pointing away from the atom supplying the lone pair (Sidgwick, 1927); thus:

The atom that supplies the lone pair is known as the *donor*, and the atom that receives a share is the *acceptor*. Since it is one atom that donates the lone pair, the co-ordinate link is also known as the *dative* link (Sidgwick, 1927).

Before combination, both donor and acceptor are electrically neutral: after combination, the donor has lost a share in the lone pair, and the acceptor has gained a share. Therefore the donor acquires a positive charge and the acceptor a negative charge, and the presence of these charges may be indicated by writing the formula H_3N-BF_3 .

Hence we have a covalent bond holding together two charged portions, and because of this the co-ordinate link is also known as the semi-polar or semi-ionic bond (Noyes, 1933). The co-ordinate link has also been named the "mixed double bond" (Lowry, 1923), and the "semi-polar double bond" (Sugden, 1925).

Once the co-ordinate bond has been formed, there may be no way of distinguishing it from any other covalent bond, but since one atom has supplied the pair of shared electrons, charges are produced in the molecule. When a covalent bond is formed, charges may also be produced in the molecule, giving rise to a dipole (q.v.). Hence the co-ordinate bond is effectively a covalent bond. The extent of the charge on each atom in a dative (or covalent) bond may be found as follows. Add the number of unshared electrons to one half of the shared electrons, and compare the result with the number of valency electrons of the neutral atom, e.g., (i) methane, CH_4 . Here there are 8 shared electrons; $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4 =$ number of electrons in the neutral carbon atom; therefore methane is uncharged. (ii) $H_3N \rightarrow BF_3$. For the nitrogen atom we have $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4$; but since the neutral nitrogen has 5 valency electrons, in the compound $H_3N \rightarrow BF_3$ the nitrogen has a charge of +1. For boron we have $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4$; but since the neutral boron atom has 3 electrons, in this molecular compound the boron has a charge of -1.

Electrovalent compounds are good electrical conductors in the fused state or in solution. They are generally non-volatile, and are usually insoluble in hydrocarbons and allied solvents. Covalent compounds are non-electrical conductors, are generally volatile, and are usually soluble in hydrocarbons and allied solvents. Since the covalent bond is directional, stereoisomerism (space-isomerism) is possible (see p. 399). Co-ordinated compounds behave very much like covalent compounds, but they are usually

less volatile than purely covalent compounds.

CHELATE COMPOUNDS

In the co-ordinated compounds discussed above, one donor atom has shared its lone pair with one acceptor atom. It is possible, however, for an acceptor atom to receive a number of shares in lone pairs, e.g., cobalt-ammine chloride, $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}3Cl^-$. In this complex, the cobalt atom receives shares from six lone pairs, each ammonia molecule donating its nitrogen lone pair (I). Now let us consider ethylenediamine as the donating molecule. Its structure is $NH_2-CH_2-NH_2$. In this molecule there

$$(I) \begin{bmatrix} H_3N & NH_3 \\ V & NH_3 \\ H_3N & NH_3 \\ NH_4 \end{bmatrix}^{3+} 3Cl^{-} \begin{bmatrix} Co \left\{ \begin{array}{c} NH_2 \cdot CH_2 \\ NH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{array} \right\}_3 \end{bmatrix}^{3+} (II)$$

are two lone pairs, and it has been found that each nitrogen atom can act independently as a donor. Thus one ethylenediamine molecule can occupy two positions in the complex, producing the cation (II). This complex will, therefore, contain three rings. Compounds such as this are known as *chelate* compounds, *chelation* taking place when the donating molecule shares two lone pairs on different atoms within the molecule with a single acceptor atom, thereby producing a ring. Chelation may also take place *intra-molecularly*, *i.e.*, between two atoms in the *same* molecule; but in these cases the chelate rings are formed, not by co-ordinate bonds, but by hydrogen bonds (see later).

DIPOLE MOMENTS

When a covalent bond is formed between two identical atoms, e.g., H—H, Cl—Cl, etc., the two electrons forming the covalent bond may be regarded as being symmetrically disposed between the two atoms. The centres of

gravity of the electrons and nuclei therefore coincide. With two dissimilar atoms the two electrons are no longer symmetrically disposed, because each atom has a different electron-affinity (electronegativity), i.e., attraction for electrons. Chlorine has a much greater electron-affinity than hydrogen; so that when chlorine and hydrogen combine to form covalent hydrogen chloride, the electrons forming the covalent bond are displaced towards the chlorine atom without any separation of the nuclei:

$$H \cdot + : Ci \cdot \longrightarrow H : Ci : \text{ or } H - Ci$$

The hydrogen atom will, therefore, be slightly positively charged, and the chlorine atom slightly negatively charged. Thus, owing to the greater electron-attracting power of the chlorine atom, the covalent bond in hydrogen chloride is characterised by the separation of small charges in the bond. A covalent bond such as this, in which one atom has a larger share of the electron-pair, is said to possess partial ionic character.

In analogy with a magnet, such a molecule is called a *dipole*, and the product of the electronic charge, e, and the distance d, between the charges (positive and negative centres) is called the *dipole moment*, μ ; *i.e.*, $\mu = e \times d$. e is of the order of 10⁻¹⁰ e.s.u.; d, 10⁻⁸ cm. Therefore μ is of the order 10⁻¹⁸ e.s.u., and this unit is known as the Debye (D), in honour of Debye, who did

a large amount of work on dipole moments.

The dipole moment is a vector quantity, and its direction is often indicated by an arrow parallel to the line joining the points of charge, and pointing

towards the negative end, e.g., H—Cl. The greater the value of the dipole moment, the greater is the *polarity* of the bond. The terms *polar* and *non-polar* are used to describe bonds, molecules and groups, and the reader is advised to make sure he appreciates how the terms are applied in each case under consideration.

The following points are useful in organic chemistry:

(i) In the bond H—X, where X is any atom other than hydrogen or carbon,

the hydrogen atom is the positive end of the dipole, i.e., H-X.

(ii) In the bond C—X, where X is any atom other than carbon, the carbon atom is the positive end of the dipole, i.e., C—X. Earlier work appeared to show that in saturated compounds of carbon, the dipole for the C—H bond was C—H. Work by Coulson (1942), however, indicates that the dipole is in the opposite direction, i.e., C—H, and that in methane the value is o·3oD. Both the direction and value, however, are not constant, but depend on the nature of the hybridistion (see p. 89).

(iii) When a molecule contains two or more polar bonds, the resultant dipole moment of the molecule is obtained by the vectorial addition of the constituent

bond dipole moments (see also pp. 427, 513).

(iv) A symmetrical molecule is non-polar, although it may contain polar bonds.

ELECTRON DISPLACEMENTS IN A MOLECULE

I. Inductive effect. Consider a carbon chain in which one terminal carbon atom is joined to a chlorine atom: $-C_3-C_2-C_1-C_1$. Chlorine has a greater electron-affinity than carbon; therefore the electron pair forming the covalent bond between the chlorine atom and C_1 will be displaced towards the chlorine atom. This causes the chlorine atom to acquire a small negative charge, and C_1 a small positive charge. Since C_1 is positively charged, it will attract towards itself the electron pair forming the covalent

bond between C_1 and C_2 . This will cause C_2 to acquire a small positive charge, but the charge will be smaller than that on C_1 because the effect of the chlorine atom has been transmitted through C_1 to C_2 . Similarly, C_3 acquires a positive charge which will be smaller than that on C_2 . This type of electron displacement along a chain is known as the *inductive effect*; it is *permanent*, and decreases rapidly as the distance from the source increases. From the practical point of view, it may be ignored after the second carbon atom. It is important to note that the electron pairs, although permanently displaced, *remain in the same valency shells*.

This inductive effect is sometimes referred to as a transmission effect, since it takes place by a displacement of the intervening electrons in the molecule. There is also another effect possible, the direct or field effect, which results from the electrostatic interaction across space or through a solvent of two charged centres in the same molecule, i.e., the direct effect takes place independently of the electronic system in the molecule (Ingold, 1934). Apparently it has not been possible to separate these two modes of inductive effect in practice.

The inductive effect may be represented in several ways. The following will be adopted in this book: $-C \rightarrow -C \rightarrow -CI$.

Inductive effects may be due to atoms or groups, and the following is the order of decreasing inductive effects:

$$NO_2$$
, F, Cl, Br, I, OCH₃, C_6H_5 , H, CH₃, C_2H_5 , (CH₃)₂CH, (CH₃)₃C

For measurement of relative inductive effects, hydrogen is chosen as reference in the molecule CR_3 —H as standard. If, when the H atom in this molecule is replaced by Z (an atom or group), the electron density in the CR_3 part of the molecule is less in this part than in CR_3 —H, then Z is said to have a -I effect (electron-attracting or electron-withdrawing). If the electron density in the CR_3 part is greater than in CR_3 —H, then Z is said to have a +I effect (electron-repelling or electron-releasing) e.g., Br is -I; C_2H_5 is +I. This terminology is due to Ingold (1926); Robinson suggests the opposite signs for I, i.e., Br is +I; C_2H_5 , -I. Ingold's terminology will be used in this book.

2. Electromeric effect. This is a temporary effect involving the complete transfer of a shared pair of electrons to one or other atom joined by a multiple bond, i.e., a double or triple bond. The electromeric effect is brought into play only at the requirements of the attacking reagent, and takes place almost instantaneously. Consider the following: C=O or C:O. At the moment of reaction the oxygen atom takes complete control of one of the shared electron pairs, the electronic structure becoming C:O:. Since the carbon has lost its share in the electron pair, and the oxygen gained a share, the carbon acquires a positive charge and the oxygen a negative one. Removal of the attacking reagent causes the charged molecule to revert to its original electronic condition. It should be noted that the original condition of the molecule will have small charges on both the carbon and oxygen atoms (positive and negative, respectively), due to the inductive effect of the oxygen, which is more strongly electron-attracting than carbon. Another effect may also operate to give each atom a small charge (see resonance).

The electromeric effect is represented as follows:

$$c \stackrel{\frown}{=} \tilde{c} \rightarrow \tilde{c} - \tilde{o}$$

The curved arrow shows the displacement of the shared electron pair, beginning at the position where the pair was originally, and ending where

the pair has migrated. It should be noted that the electromeric effect might have taken place:

$$\stackrel{\leftarrow}{c} \longrightarrow \bar{c} - \bar{\phi}$$

However, this is most unlikely, since oxygen is strongly electron-attracting, and therefore "assists" the displacement towards itself, and "opposes" the displacement away from itself. This is an example of the electromeric and inductive effects aiding each other. It is possible, however, for them to oppose each other, and when they do so, the electromeric effect generally overcomes the inductive effect, but this happens only when the chain has conjugated double bonds (see e.g., benzene).

The electromeric effect is represented by the symbol E, and is said to be +E when the displacement is away from the atom or group, and -E

when towards the atom or group (cf. the I effect).

The displacement of the electron pair forming a covalent bond when a unit charge is brought up is a measure of the *polarisability* of that bond. It is not a permanent polarisation since, when the charge is removed, the electron displacement disappears.

3. Mesomerism or Resonance. The theory of mesomerism was developed on chemical grounds. It was found that no structural formula could satisfactorily explain all the properties of certain compounds, e.g., benzene. This led to the idea that such compounds exist in a state which is some combination of two or more electronic structures, all of which seem equally capable of describing most of the properties of the compound, but none of describing all the properties. Ingold (1933) called this phenomenon mesomerism ("between the parts", i.e., an intermediate structure). Heisenberg (1926), from quantum mechanics, supplied a theoretical background for mesomerism; he called it resonance, and this is the name which is widely used.

The chief conditions for resonance are:

- (i) The positions of the nuclei in each structure must be the same or nearly the same.
 - (ii) The number of unpaired electrons in each structure must be the same.
- (iii) Each structure must have about the same internal energy, i.e., the various structures have approximately the same stability.

Let us consider carbon dioxide as an example. The electronic structure of carbon dioxide may be represented by at least three possible electronic arrangements which satisfy the above conditions:

Structures (II) and (III) are identical as a whole, since both oxygen atoms are the same.* Each structure, however, shows a given oxygen atom to be in a different state, e.g., the oxygen atom on the left in (II) is negative, whereas in (III) it is positive. Although two (or more) of the electronic structures may be the same when the molecule is considered as a whole, each one must be treated as a separate individual which makes its own contribution to the resonance state. Structures (I), (II) and (III) are called the resonating, unperturbed or canonical structures of carbon dioxide, and carbon dioxide is said to be a resonance hybrid of these structures, or in the mesomeric state.

^{*} If the two oxygen atoms are not the same but one is isotope ¹⁶O and the other isotope ¹⁸O, then clearly structures (II) and (III) are different.

It is hoped that the following crude analogy will help the reader to grasp the concept of resonance. Most readers will be familiar with the rotating disc experiment that shows the composite nature of white light. When stationary, the disc is seen to be coloured with the seven colours of the rainbow. When rotating quickly, the disc appears to be white. The resonating structures of a resonance hybrid may be compared to the seven colours, and the actual state of the resonance hybrid to the "white"; i.e., the resonating structures may be regarded as superimposed on one another, the final result being one kind of molecule. In a resonance hybrid all the molecules are the same; a resonance hybrid cannot be expressed by any single structure.

In a resonance hybrid the molecules have, to some extent, the properties of each resonating structure. The greater the contribution of any one structure, the more closely does the actual state approach to that structure. At the same time, however, a number of properties differ from those of any The observed heat of formation of carbon dioxide is greater one structure. than the calculated value by 31.6 kg. cal. In other words, carbon dioxide requires 31.6 kg. cal. more energy than expected to break it up into its elements, i.e., carbon dioxide is more stable than anticipated on the structure O=C=O. How can this be explained? Arguments based on quantum mechanics show that a resonance hybrid would be more stable than any single resonating structure, i.e., the internal energy of a resonance hybrid is less than that calculated for any one of the resonating structures. The difference between the heat of formation of the actual compound, i.e., the observed value, and that of the resonating structure which has the lowest internal energy (obtained by calculation) is called the resonance energy. Thus the value of the resonance energy of any resonance hybrid is not an absolute value; it is a relative value, the resonating structure containing the least internal energy being chosen as the arbitrary standard for the resonance The greater the resonance energy, the greater is the stabilisation The resonance energy is a maximum when the resonating due to resonance. structures have equal energy content, and the more resonating structures there are, the greater is the resonance energy. When the resonating structures are identical in energy content, and consequently the resonance energy is a maximum, the compound is said to be completely degenerate.

The resonance energy of a molecule is a property of the molecule in the ground state. Most measurements of resonance energies have been obtained from heats of combustion, but a few measurements have also been obtained from heats of hydrogenation; the latter method is more accurate than the The heat of combustion of the most stable classical structure (i.e., the resonating structure with the lowest internal energy) is, as mentioned above, obtained by calculation. This presupposes that accurate values for bond-energies are known. If these values are not accurate, then one cannot expect to obtain accurate resonance energies. In practice, several different sets of bond-energies have been proposed, one set using bond-energies in isolation (i.e., the bond between two atoms is assumed to be independent of other atoms in the molecule), and another set using bond-energies which depend on the environment (i.e., takes into account other atoms in the mole-Thus different resonance energies are usually obtained for any given molecule, and so, when these values are small (i.e., the resonance energy is small), the value may be almost, if not completely, due to the use of inaccurate bond-energies and not actually due to stabilisation of the molecule

by resonance.

Another property of the resonance hybrid which differs from that of any of the resonating structures is that of the bond length, *i.e.*, the distance between atoms joined by a covalent bond. The normal length of the car-

bonyl double bond (C=O) in ketones is about 1.22 A; the value found in carbon dioxide is 1.15 A. For a given pair of atoms, the length of a single bond is greater than that of a double bond, which, in turn, is greater than that of a triple bond. Resonance, therefore, accounts for the carbonyl bond in carbon dioxide not being single, double or triple (see also butadiene, p. 87, and benzene, p. 507).

In a resonance hybrid, the electronic arrangement and bond lengths will be different from those of the resonating structures. Consequently the observed dipole moment may differ from that calculated for any one

structure.

As we have seen above, in a resonance hybrid all the molecules have the same structure. A difficulty that arises with the resonance theory is the representation of a resonance hybrid. The molecules corresponding to the structures chosen as the resonating structures do not necessarily have an actual existence. Thus, if these resonating structures are fictitious, what fictitious structures are we to choose? The normal way of solving this problem is first to ascertain the structure of the molecule by the usual methods, and then describe it by means of the classical valency-bond Let us consider again the case of carbon dioxide. The classical structure is (I) (see above). As we have also seen, it has been found that not all the properties of carbon dioxide are described by this classical formula. Thus the classical structure is an approximation, and it is in this sense that classical structures are fictitious. By postulating other electronic structures (II) and (III), wave functions can then also be obtained for these fictitious structures. By a linear combination of all three functions, a "structure" is obtained which describes the properties of carbon dioxide. This "structure" is called the resonance hybrid of the classical (I) and the two postulated electronic structures (II) and (III).

It is very important to note here that wave-mechanics offers a theoretical method of studying the electron distribution in a molecule, but starts with a knowledge of the relative positions of all the nuclei concerned, i.e., with the "classical structure". Theoretically, it is possible to start from a molecular formula, and then solve the structure. The number of possibilities and mathematical difficulties, however, are far too great at present, and so it seems that the classical chemist, who arrives at the classical structures by classical methods, will still be "in business" for a long time to come. Since, however, by means of wave-mechanics one can calculate the density of electronic charge at all points in a molecule (of known classical structure), it is possible from this information to deduce charge distributions, bond lengths and bond angles, and consequently the size and shape of a mole-

cule.

The question that now arises is: Starting with the classical structure, what other electronic structures are we justified in postulating? A very important point in this connection is that resonance can occur only when all the atoms involved lie in the same plane (or nearly in the same plane). Thus any change in structure which prevents planarity will diminish or inhibit resonance. This phenomenon is known as steric inhibition of resonance (p. 688).

In practice, then, the conditions described above must be considered when choosing canonical structures. At the same time, the following observations

will be a useful guide:

(i) Elements of the first two rows never violate the octet rule (hydrogen, of course, can never have more than a duplet).

(ii) The more stable a structure, then generally the larger will be its contribution to the resonance state. The stability of a molecule can be found from its bond energies. The bond energy is the amount of energy required

to dissociate a compound, say AB, in the gaseous state, into the neutral atoms A. and B. Generally, the structure with the largest number of bonds

is the most stable.

(iii) If the different resonating structures have the same number of bonds, but some structures are charged, then the charged molecules will be less stable than the uncharged. The high energy content of a charged molecule is due to the work put into the molecule to separate the charges, and the greater the distance of charge separation, the less stable is that structure. Even so, charged structures may make a considerable contribution to the resonance state, since resonance among a number of charged structures gives a resonance hybrid that is more stable than any one resonating structure.

The final problem is the method of representing a resonance hybrid. Various methods have been used, and the one used in this book is that introduced by Bury (1935). This consists of writing down the resonating structures with a double-headed arrow between each pair:

$$0=C=0 \leftrightarrow \bar{0}-C\equiv \bar{0} \leftrightarrow \bar{0}\equiv C-\bar{0}$$

Inductive and resonance (mesomeric) effects are permanently operating in the "real" molecule; collectively they are known as the polarisation effects. On the other hand, there are also two temporary (time-variable) effects, the electromeric effect and the inductomeric effect (which operates by an inductive mechanism). Both of these are brought into play by the attacking reagent, and collectively they are known as the polarisability effects. Remick (1943) has suggested the use of subscripts s and d to represent the static (permanent) and dynamic (time-variable) effects. Thus the inductive effect may be represented by the symbol I, and the inductomeric effect by Since polarisability effects are brought into play only by the approach of the attacking reagent, they will therefore aid and never inhibit a reaction.

Strictly speaking, the term resonance effect (R) is not the same as the mesomeric effect (M). The mesomeric effect is a permanent polarisation, and the mechanism of electron transfer is the same as that in the electromeric effect, *i.e.*, the mesomeric effect is a permanent displacement of electron pairs which occurs in a system of the type Z-C=C; *e.g.*, $Z=R_2N$, Cl:

$$R_2$$
N-C=C-; :Ci-C=C-

Thus the essential requirement for mesomerism is the presence of a multiple bond in the molecule. On the other hand, the resonance effect embraces all permanent electron displacements in the molecule in the ground state, e.g., the hydrogen chloride molecule is a resonance hybrid of two resonating

 $H-Cl \leftrightarrow H^+Cl^-$

Since there is no multiple bond in this molecule, the mesomeric effect is not possible.

When the electronic displacement is away from the group the mesomeric (resonance) effect is said to be +M (+R), and when towards the group,

-M (-R).

The mesomeric effect is particularly important in conjugated systems (p. 84), and the combined mesomeric and electromeric effects are known as the conjugative effect. This term is also used in the same sense as the resonance effect. Also, since this combined effect was first recognised in connection with tautomerism, it has also been called the tautomeric effect (±T).

The possible polar influences of groups are shown in the following table:

Electronic mechanism	Polarisation effect (permanent)	Polarisability effect (temporary)
Inductive (±I)	Inductive (I or I,)	Inductomeric (I _d)
Conjugative (Tautomeric, $\pm T$; or Resonance, $\pm R$)	Mesomeric (M) or Resonance (R)	Electromeric (E)
Fields in which operative	Physical properties. Reaction equilibria. Reaction rates.	Reaction rates only

As has been pointed out above, resonance describes all permanent electron displacements in the molecule in the ground state. It therefore follows that the I-effect can be described as due to resonance. Thus resonance is the combination of I- and M-effects. It is more convenient, however, from the point of view of the organic chemist, to consider a molecule with respect to its I-effect and "resonance" (mesomeric) effect separately. Hence from this point of view, resonance is the additional permanent electronic displacements to the I-effect, and it is customary to ignore the latter effect when discussing "resonance". In other words, resonance, in this context, is concerned only with the part of the molecule containing multiple bonds and is therefore, strictly speaking, π -electron resonance. This is the sense in which the term resonance will be used in this book.

Effect of structure on reactivity. The type of reaction of an organic compound is largely dependent on the nature of the functional group present It has been found that various structural changes, e.g., the introduction of a given group into different positions in a molecule containing a given functional group, usually affect the rate of a given type of reaction and also the equilibrium position, and may even change the type of mechanism of the reaction. Much work has been done to try to correlate structure and reactivity (i.e., rate of reaction), and as an outcome of this work, it appears that some sort of quantitative correlation can be made on the basis of consideration of independent contributions of inductive, resonance (mesomeric) and steric effects. When each effect has been assessed, then all three may be combined, and in this way there is obtained a relationship between structure and reactivity. In the text are discussed many cases of the effects on reaction rates and mechanism by polar (I and R) and steric effects.

Reactions in organic chemistry may be classified into the following main types: (i) substitution; (ii) replacement or displacement; (iii) addition; (iv) elimination; (v) isomerisation (rearrangement).

THE HYDROGEN BOND OR HYDROGEN BRIDGE

Compounds containing OH or NH groups often exhibit unexpected properties such as relatively high boiling points, and it was soon felt necessary to assume that the elements oxygen or nitrogen were linked by means of hydrogen, thereby producing the hydrogen bond. Detailed study has shown that the unexpected properties were exhibited only when the atoms participating in the bond had high electron-affinity-fluorine, oxygen and nitrogen (decreasing in this order), and to a less extent, chlorine and sulphur. the hydrogen bond explained, for example, the existence of the $\hat{H}F_2^-$ ion, the association of hydroxylic compounds such as water, alcohols, etc., and the association of ammonia.

The exact nature of the hydrogen bond has been the subject of much discussion. Possibly a number of factors contribute, but it appears that the most important one is electrostatic. In bond Z—H, if Z has high electronaffinity, there will be a relatively large amount of polarity, i.e., the state of affairs will be Z—H, where δ + is relatively large. Since the hydrogen atom has a tiny volume, the H will exert a large electrostatic force and so can attract atoms with a relatively large δ -— charge, providing these atoms have a small atomic radius. Fluorine, oxygen and nitrogen are of this character. If the atom has a greater radius the electrostatic forces are weaker; thus chlorine, although it has about the same electron-affinity as nitrogen, forms very weak hydrogen bonds since its atomic radius is greater.

This theory of electrostatic union has much to support it. The hydrogen bond is very weak, and has more in common with the "van der Waals forces" (which are electrical in nature) than with anything else. Values obtained for the energy of the hydrogen bond are H—F....H, 10 k.cal./mole;

H—O....H, 7; H—N....H, 2.

Hydrogen bond formation *intramolecularly*, *i.e.*, involving one molecule only, gives rise to ring formation or chelation, and this usually when the formation of a 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring is possible. Hydrogen bonding *intermolecularly*, *i.e.*, between two or more molecules, gives rise to association. Many examples of hydrogen bonding will be found in the text, and this is represented by a dotted line between the hydrogen and other atom involved (as shown above).

Hydrogen bonding affects all physico-chemical properties such as m.p., b.p., solubility, spectra (infra-red and Raman shifts), etc., e.g., association produces a higher boiling point than expected (e.g., from the molecular weight of the compound). On the other hand, chelation usually produces a lower boiling point than expected, e.g., a nitro-compound usually has a higher boiling point than its parent compound, but if chelation is possible in the nitro-compound, the boiling point is lowered (see, e.g., nitrophenols, p. 626).

ATOMIC AND MOLECULAR ORBITALS

So far, we have discussed the structure of molecules in terms of valency There is an alternative method of investigating the structure of molecules, and to appreciate this approach—and to extend the other—it is necessary to consider the structure of matter from the point of view of wave-mechanics. Classical physics (i.e., the laws of mechanics, etc.) is satisfactory when dealing with large masses. These laws are approximations, but deviations become significant only when dealing with very small particles such as electrons and nuclei. The behaviour of these small particles, however, may be satisfactorily studied by wave (quantum) mechanics. This uses the idea of the particle-wave duality of matter. It has already been pointed out that the electron may be regarded as a tiny mass carrying a negative charge. In 1923, de Broglie proposed that every moving particle has wave properties associated with it. This was first experimentally verified in the case of the electron (Davisson and Germer, 1927; G. P. Thus an electron has a dual nature, particle and wave, Thomson, 1928). but it behaves as one or the other according to the nature of the experiment; it cannot at the same time behave as both. According to wave-mechanics, a moving particle is represented by a wave function ψ such that $\psi^2 dv$ is the probability of finding the particle in the element of volume dv. The greater the value of ψ^2 , the greater is the probability of finding the electron in that Theoretically, ψ has a finite value at a large distance (compared volume dv.

with atomic dimensions) from the nucleus, but in practice there is very little probability of finding the electron beyond a distance of z-3A. It is therefore possible to map out regions or contours within which the probability of finding the electron is high, and outside which there is very little likelihood of finding the electron.

An alternative interpretation of the wave function ψ is to regard the electron as a cloud (charge-cloud), the density of the cloud at any point being proportional to ψ^2 . Hence once again it is possible to draw contours within which almost all the electron charge is to be found. These regions (of probability or of density of charge-cloud) are known as atomic orbitals

(A.O.s), and have characteristic shapes.

In 1926, Schrödinger developed the wave-equation, which connected the wave function ψ of an electron with its energy, E. This equation has an infinite number of solutions, but very few of these solutions describe the known behaviour of electrons. Thus only certain values for E are permissible, since certain conditions must be satisfied. The permitted solutions for ψ are called the eigenfunctions, and the corresponding values of E are called the eigenvalues. A number of eigenfunctions exist, the simplest being those which possess spherical symmetry (ψ_s function), and the next simplest being those which possess an axis of symmetry (ψ_p function). The eigenvalues (i.e., the energy values) for the ψ_s functions are not, in general, the same as those for the ψ_p functions. Since ψ^2 dv measures the probability of finding the electron in the element of volume dv, we can therefore picture "probability regions" which will be generated by the expressions ψ_s^2 and ψ_p^2 . Such regions are those we have called atomic orbitals, and we can speak of the energy of an A.O. if we mean the eigenvalue (energy value) corresponding to that wave function ψ .

In addition to its wave function ψ , an electron also has spin. Two electrons can have the same wave function, *i.e.*, can occupy the same orbital provided their spins are opposite (Pauli exclusion principle). In this case the electrons are said to be paired.

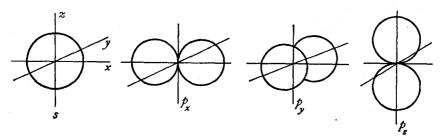


FIG. 2.1.

The various A.O.s are classified as s, p, d, f, \ldots orbitals. Only the s and p orbitals need concern us, and Fig. 1* shows their shapes. The s-orbital is spherically symmetrical, which means that the region within which it is reasonable to expect to find the electron is a sphere having the nucleus as centre. The p-orbitals are dumb-bell in shape, and the two halves are separated by a nodal plane, over which the value of ψ is zero, i.e., there is no likelihood of finding the electron in this plane. In these p-orbitals, the electron is confined to regions which have a marked directional character, each orbital having an axis at right angles to those of the other

^{*} Each diagram has been given two numbers, the first indicating the chapter, and the second the order in that chapter. Reference to a diagram in its own chapter will be indicated by the second number only.

two, and hence they are known as the p_x , p_y , p_z orbitals, respectively. These orbitals are entirely equivalent except for their directional property.

The order of orbital energies is $1s < 2s < 2p < 3s < 3p < \dots$ Since an electron must occupy some particular orbital, when the electron "jumps" from that orbital to another, it acquires the energy of the new orbital, absorbing or emitting the difference in a "discrete energy packet" or quantum. Not all transitions between different energy levels are allowable; a definite rule of selection exists, e.g., permitted transitions are $s \longrightarrow p$, $p \longrightarrow s$ or d, etc.; $s \longrightarrow s$ is not permitted. When an electron absorbs a quantum of energy, it is driven into an (allowable) orbital of higher energy. The atom is then said to be "excited", and is more reactive. On returning to its normal orbital, the electron emits the quantum of energy at a definite wave-length, giving rise to a particular line in the emission spectrum (see p. 773). When all the electrons in an atom are in their normal orbitals, i.e., orbitals of lowest energy, the atom is said to be in the "ground" state.

So far. we have dealt only with atoms, i.e., with electrons associated with The wave-equations for molecules cannot be solved without making some approximations. Two types of approximations have been made, one set giving rise to the valence-bond method (V.B.); and the other set to the molecular orbital method (M.O.). The V.B. method—due mainly to the work of Heitler, London, Slater and Pauling-considers the molecule as being made up of atoms with electrons in atomic orbitals on each atom. Thus a molecule is treated as if it were composed of atoms which, to some extent, retain their individual character when linked to other atoms. M.O. method—due mainly to the work of Hund, Lennard-Jones and Mulliken -treats a molecule in the same way as an atom, except that in the molecule an electron moves in the field of more than one nucleus, i.e., molecular orbitals are polycentric. Thus each electron in a molecule is described by a certain wave function, the molecular orbital, for which contours can be drawn as for A.O.s, but differing in that the former are polycentric and the latter In general, the greater the freedom (i.e., the larger the region for movement) allowed to an electron, the lower will be its energy. atoms combine to form a molecule because, owing to the overlap of the A.O.s when the atoms are brought together, the electrons acquire a greater freedom. and the energy of the system is lowered below that of the separate atoms. Energy would therefore have to be supplied to separate the atoms in the molecule, and the greater the amount of energy necessary, the stronger are the bonds formed between the various atoms.

Let us now consider the case of the hydrogen molecule. A hydrogen atom has one is electron. When the bond is formed between two hydrogen atoms to form the hydrogen molecule, these two is electrons become paired to form molecular electrons, i.e., both occupy the same M.O., a state of affairs which is possible provided their spins are antiparallel. A very important principle for obtaining the M.O. is that the bond energy is greatest when the component A.O.s overlap one another as much as possible. To get the maximum amount of overlap of orbitals, the orbitals should be in the same plane. Thus the M.O. is considered as being a linear combination of atomic orbitals with maximum overlap (L.C.A.O.). Furthermore, according to L.C.A.O. theory, the binding energy is greater the more nearly equal are the energies of the component A.O.s. If these energies differ very much, then there will be no significant combination between the two atoms concerned.

Since the hydrogen molecule is composed of two identical atoms, the probability of finding both electrons simultaneously near the same nucleus is very small. Hence one might expect the M.O. to be symmetrical with respect

to the two hydrogen nuclei, *i.e.*, the M.O. in the hydrogen molecule will be "plum-shaped" (Fig. 2).

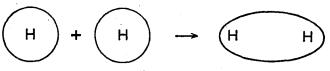


FIG. 2.2.

Although the probability of finding the two electrons simultaneously near the same nucleus is very small, nevertheless this probability exists, and gives rise to the two *ionic* structures H⁺H⁻ and H⁻H⁺. Thus the hydrogen molecule will be a resonance hybrid of three resonating structures, one purely covalent (*i.e.*, the two electrons are *equally* shared), and two ionic (*i.e.*, the pair of electrons are associated with *one* nucleus all the time):

$H:H \longleftrightarrow \dot{H}:\bar{H} \longleftrightarrow \bar{H}:\dot{H}$

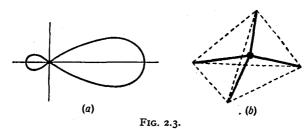
Calculation has shown that the ionic structures contribute very little to the actual state of the hydrogen molecule, and the bond between the two hydrogen atoms is described as a covalent bond with partial ionic character. should here be noted that when the single bond is formed between the two hydrogen atoms, the probability of finding the electrons is greatest in the region between the two nuclei. It is this concentration of the negatively charged electrons between the two positive hydrogen nuclei that binds the nuclei together. Since electrons are negatively charged, they will repel each other and so tend to keep out of the region between the two nuclei. On the other hand, since the spins of the two electrons are antiparallel, this produces attraction between the two electrons, thereby tending to concentrate them in the internuclear region. The net result is that the electron density for paired electrons is greatest between the two nuclei. Such a bond is said to be a localised M.O., and preserves the idea of a bond connecting the two atoms. This localisation (in a covalent bond) gives rise to the properties of bond lengths, dipole moments, polarisability and force constants.

HYBRIDISATION OF BOND ORBITALS

The electron configuration of carbon is $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p_x, 2p_y)$. It therefore appears to be bivalent. To be quadrivalent, the $(2s)^2$ and the $(2p_x, 2p_y)$ electrons must be involved. One way is to uncouple the paired 2s electrons, and then promote one of them to the empty $2p_z$ orbital. Should this be done, four valencies would be obtained, since each of the electrons could now be paired with an electron of another atom. The resulting bonds, however, would not all be equivalent, since we would now have the component A.O.s 2s, $2p_x$, $2p_y$, $2p_z$. All work on saturated carbon compounds indicates that the four valencies of carbon are equivalent (but see below). In order to get four equivalent valencies, the four "pure" A.O.s must be "mixed" or hybridised. It is possible, however, to hybridise these four "pure" A.O.s in a number of ways to give four valencies which may, or may not, be equivalent. Three methods of hybridisation are important: (i) tetrahedral $(sp^2 \text{ bond})$, (iii) trigonal $(sp^2 \text{ bond})$, (iii) digonal (sp bond).

(i) In tetrahedral hybridisation, the (2s) and $(2p_x, 2p_y, 2p_z)$ electrons are all hybridised, resulting in four equivalent orbitals arranged tetrahedrally, i.e., pointing towards the four corners of a regular tetrahedron (Fig. 3). The orbitals are greatly concentrated along these four directions (Fig. a shows

the shape along one of these directions). Then by linear combination with the 1s orbitals of four hydrogen atoms, four equivalent M.O.s are obtained for methane. Because of the large amount of overlapping between the hybridised A.O.s of the carbon and the s A.O. of the hydrogen atom, there will be strong binding between the nuclei. As in the case of the hydrogen molecule, each M.O. is almost completely confined to the region between the two nuclei concerned, *i.e.*, in methane are four *localised* molecular orbitals. This scheme of localised M.O.s may be satisfactorily applied to all compounds containing single covalent bonds. Bond orbitals which are symmetrical about the line joining the two nuclei concerned are known as σ -bonds.



The above state of affairs holds good only so long as four *identical* groups are attached to the carbon atom, e.g., in CH_4 , CCl_4 , $\mathrm{C(CH}_3)_4$, etc. When the groups are different, e.g., in CHCl_3 , the four bonds are no longer equivalent. The four carbon valencies are now hybridised in a non-equivalent fashion, pointing towards the four corners of an irregular tetrahedron. In CHCl_3 , the three $\mathrm{Cl-C-Cl}$ angles are increased from the normal angle of 109° 28′ to about 111°, and the three $\mathrm{Cl-C-H}$ angles decreased to about 108°.

(ii) In trigonal hybridisation, the 2s, $2p_x$ and $2p_y$ orbitals are hybridised,

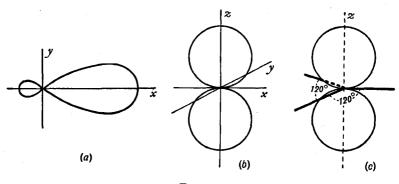


FIG. 2.4.

resulting in three equivalent coplanar orbitals pointing at angles of 120° in the xy plane (Fig. 4a). The remaining orbital is the undisturbed $2p_z$ (Fig. b). Thus there will be three equivalent valencies in one plane and a fourth pointing at right angles to this plane (Fig. c). The three coplanar valencies form σ -bonds, and the $2p_z$ valency forms the so-called π -bond. The $2p_z$ electrons are known as π -electrons, mobile electrons, or unsaturation electrons when they form the π -bond. The trigonal arrangement occurs in compounds containing a double bond, which is regarded as being made up

of a strong bond (σ -bond) between two trigonal hybrid A.O.s of carbon, and a weaker bond (π -bond) due to the relatively small overlap of the two pure p_z orbitals in a plane at right angles to the trigonal hybrids. Fig. 5(a) shows the plan, and (b) the elevation of ethylene, $CH_2 = CH_2$ (see also p. 427).

The H-C-H angle in ethylene has been measured spectroscopically, and it has been found to be 119° 55' (Gallaway et al., 1942). This is in agreement with the value expected for trigonal hybridisation.

It is the π -electrons which are involved in the electromeric and resonance effects. When a compound contains two or more double bonds, the resulting

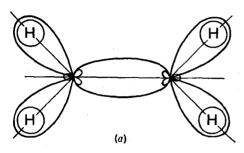
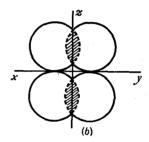


FIG. 2.5.



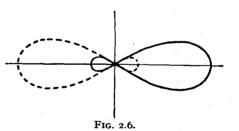
xy is plane of trigonal hybridisation

M.O.s depend on the positions of these bonds with respect to one another (see, e.g., butadiene, p. 88, and benzene, p. 509).

(iii) In digonal hybridisation, only one 2s electron and the $2p_x$ electron are hybridised, resulting in two equivalent collinear orbitals (Fig. 6); the $2p_y$ and $2p_z$ electrons remain undisturbed. Thus we get two equivalent valencies (forming the o-type of bond) pointing in opposite directions along a straight line, and two other valencies (each forming a π-type of bond).

one concentrated along the y-axis (the $2p_y$ orbital), and the other along the z-axis (the $2p_z$ orbital). The digonal arrangement occurs in compounds containing a triple bond, e.g., acetylene.

When the electrons of any atom have been placed in hybridised orbitals, that atom is said to be in a valence state". The atom on its own cannot exist in a valence state; energy is required to promote the



atom to this condition. This energy is obtained through the formation of bonds which are stronger with the hybridised orbitals than with the "pure" orbitals, i.e., more energy is released with the former than with the latter.

In the foregoing account of carbon hybridisation, multiple bonds (double and triple) have been described in terms of σ -bonds and π -bonds. however, an alternative approach to this problem of valency theory. The application of this theory makes use of the Pauli exclusion principle, and also takes into account the electrostatic repulsion between electrons. ciples lead to the conclusion that electrons with the same spin avoid each other. Thus, for example, Zimmerman et al. (1949) have shown, as a consequence of the exclusion principle, that the most probable arrangement of the four electrons of carbon $(2s, 2p_x, 2p_y, 2p_z)$ is at the corners of a regular tetrahedron provided all the electrons have the same spin. This tetrahedral configuration, however, is achieved only if the four electrons are equivalent, *i.e.*, the electrons occupy orbitals which in carbon atoms are sp³ hybrid orbitals.

As we have seen, in *saturated* carbon compounds the four sp^3 orbitals point towards the corners of a tetrahedron. In ethylene we have used sp^2 trigonal hybridisation (one σ - and one π -bond) to describe the double bond. It is possible, however, to still use sp^3 hybridisation to describe ethylene. In this case two electrons are in one orbital of "banana" shape ("bent" bond), and the other two electrons in a second "banana" orbital, equivalent to the first but the mirror image of it. Thus ethylene may be represented (Fig. 7; see also p. 488):

It is interesting to note that this "bent" bond method of representing ethylene is equivalent to Baeyer's description of a double bond (p. 487).

In the same way, the triple bond in acetylene (previously described in terms of one σ - and two π -bonds) may also be regarded as made up of three equivalent sp^3 hybrids symmetrically disposed round the C—C axis.

Quantum mechanical arguments show that both methods of representing these multiple bonds are equal to each other, each method having certain advantages. The σ - π bond method is more convenient for describing transitions from one state into another (e.g., in electronic spectra), whereas the "bent" bond method is more convenient for describing electron distribution in a molecule.

Now let us consider molecules in which the central atom has lone pairs. Consider nitrogen, with electron configuration $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^3$. This has three 2p orbitals, and if each combines with a hydrogen atom, then the molecule of ammonia is NH_3 . In this molecule there is a lone pair $(2s)^2$, and the three hydrogen atoms, bound by the overlap with 2p orbitals, will therefore have a valency angle of 90° . The nitrogen atom is tercovalent, and by virtue of its lone pair, can act as a donor to become quadrivalent uni-electrovalent, e.g.,

$$:NH_3 + HCl \longrightarrow NH_4 + Cl$$

At first sight it might appear that the four hydrogen atoms in the ammonium ion are not equivalent; three bonds are formed from 2p electrons, and one by the lone $2s^2$. However, the fact is that all four hydrogen atoms in NH_4^+ are equivalent, and also the valency angle is about 109.5° (the tetrahedral value). Moreover, the valency angle in ammonia is about 107° and not 90° (the expected value from 2p bonding).

Now consider oxygen $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^4$. One 2p orbital is doubly filled, and so, in water, one would expect that the two single 2p electrons would combine with hydrogen to form water in which the bond angle HOH is 90°. Actually the bond angle is about 104.5° . Also, since the water molecule has two lone pairs, it can act as a donor to form the hydroxonium ion, H_3O^* , and it is found that all the three hydrogen atoms are equivalent. The valency angles are nearly those expected of tetrahedral configurations, and the difference from 90° is far too large to be accounted for by repulsion between hydrogen atoms. A satisfactory explanation is as follows. Sidgwick et al. (1940) assumed that lone pairs of electrons and bonding pairs were of equal importance, and that they arranged themselves symmetrically so as to minimise the repulsions between them. Thus pairs of electrons in a valency shell, whether a bonding pair or a lone pair, are always arranged in the same way, and this depends only on the total number of pairs. Thus two pairs are arranged linearly $(e.g., HgCl_2)$, three pairs in the form of an equilateral triangle $(e.g., BCl_3)$, four pairs tetrahedrally $(e.g., CH_4)$, five pairs in the form of trigonal bipyramid and six pairs octahedrally. In all cases it is assumed that all the pairs of electrons occupy hybridised orbitals and only σ -bonds are present (see also p. 335).

Now let us consider ammonia and water from this point of view. In each of the valency shells of these central atoms there are four pairs of electrons (nitrogen with one lone pair, and oxygen with two lone pairs). If these four pairs occupy four tetrahedrally hybridised orbitals, then the valency angles should be about

109.5°. As we have seen above, in ammonia the angle is about 107°, and in water about 104.5°. The problem then is to account for these deviations from the anticipated "regular" shapes. This may be explained by assuming electrostatic repulsions between electron pairs in the valency shell (both bonding and lone pairs) are in the following order:

lone pair — lone pair > lone pair — bond pair > bond pair — bond pair.

This order can be explained on the basis that lone pairs are more concentrated than bonding pairs (the latter are "stretched" in the formation of covalent Thus lone-pair electrons exert greater electrostatic repulsions on other lone pairs than on bonding pairs. Consequently, when lone pairs occupy the valency shell, bonding pairs are "forced together". In CH₄ there are four bonding pairs, and so the distribution is symmetrical with a valency angle of 109° 28'. In NH₃, there are three bonding pairs and one lone pair, and since the latter has a bigger repulsive force, the bonding pairs are forced closer together (the bond angle is about 107°). It should also be noted that the lone pair is also in a hybridised orbital, and so when the ammonia molecule is converted into the ammonium ion the four bonding pairs are in the same state of hybridisation, and consequently all four hydrogen atoms are equivalent.

In the water molecule (bond angle 104.5°), there are two lone pairs, and consequently the bonding pairs are "closed up" more than in ammonia.

Other factors also play a part in deciding the values of the bond angles: the electronegativity of the central atom and the electronegativities of the attached

Let us now consider the hydrogen chloride molecule, H:Cl:. Here again the four pairs of electrons of the chlorine atom (one bonding pair and three lone pairs) each occupy each sp^3 hybrid orbital. In this molecule, however, since chlorine is more strongly electron-attracting than hydrogen, the electrons are more likely to be simultaneously near the former atom than the latter. Thus, although the electrons will be found with great probability in the region between the atoms, i.e., we have a localised M.O., nevertheless the region near the chlorine atom will tend to be occupied more than that near the hydrogen atom. In other words, in addition to the covalent structure H—Cl, there will also be a significant contribution of the ionic structure H+Cl⁻, the contribution of H-Cl⁺ being negligible. Thus we may say that hydrogen chloride is a resonance hybrid of the two resonating structures H—Cl and H+Cl⁻. The actual hydrogen chloride molecule will

therefore have a dipole moment H—Cl.

In general, when two dissimilar atoms are linked, the contribution of the two ionic structures, A+B- and A-B+, will not be equally important. The greater the electron-affinity of B with respect to A, the greater will be the contribution of A+B- to the actual state of the molecule. The problem is then to decide what are the weights of the contributions of the resonating structures. The importance of this problem is readily seen from a consideration of carbon dioxide.

$$O = C = O$$
 $O = C = O$ $O = C = O$ $O = C = O$

Suppose these three structures are described by the wave functions ψ_1 , ψ_2 and ψ_3 . Then the actual molecule will be represented by a wave function which is a linear combination of the three structures:

$$\psi = a_1 \psi_1 + a_2 \psi_2 + a_3 \psi_3$$

The best approximation is given by values for the coefficients a_1 , a_2 and a_3 that give the *lowest energy* to the resonance hybrid, *i.e.*, coefficients a_1 , a_2

and a_3 are a measure of the weights of the resonating structures. This may be done by calculation. On the other hand, in *qualitative* resonance arguments, it is usual to assume that the weight of a resonating structure is directly related to its energy content. This, however, appears to be satisfactory only when two structures are involved, but often leads to erroneous results when three or more are involved.

Now let us consider the problem of ionic character of a bond, and for this purpose let us examine the hydrogen chloride molecule. There are two important structures for this molecule, one purely covalent and the other purely ionic: H—Cl and H+Cl⁻. The wave function of the resonance hybrid is:

 $\psi = \psi_{\text{covalent}} + a\psi_{\text{ionic}}$

When the value of a is such that minimum energy is obtained, then $(a^2/\mathbf{1} + a^2) \times \mathbf{100}$ is called the *per cent. ionic character* of the bond. This may be calculated from a knowledge of the dipole moment of the bond. The following values have been found for the hydrogen halides:

Thus HF is largely ionic, and HI is mainly covalent.

We have already discussed the problem of the ground and excited states of an atom. Now let us consider the analogous position of molecules. Suppose we are dealing with a diatomic molecule in which each atom has supplied one electron to form the bond. By means of the L.C.A.O. theory, the solution

for the M.O. is found by ultimately solving a quadratic equation derived from the combination of the two wave functions (A.O.s). Two real roots are obtained, i.e., two M.O.s of different energy levels are possible when two A.O.s are combined. Now it is possible for both electrons to occupy either M.O., or for one electron to be in the M.O. of the lower energy level and the other in the higher energy level. When both electrons occupy the lower M.O., the molecule is in the ground state, and when one or both electrons occupy the higher M.O., the molecule is in an excited state. Suppose E₁ and E₂

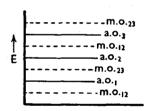
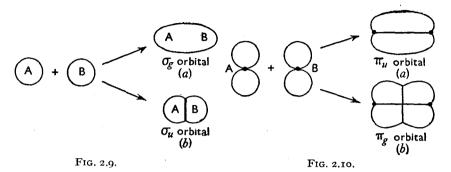


Fig. 2.8.

(where $E_1 < E_2$) are the energies of the two contributing A.O.s and \mathscr{E}_1 and \mathscr{E}_2 , (where $\mathscr{E}_1 < \mathscr{E}_2$) are the energies of the two resulting M.O.s. On comparing these energies, it will be found that $\mathscr{E}_1 < E_1$ and $\mathscr{E}_2 > E_2$, i.e., one M.O. has lower energy than the lower of its components (this is the ground state), and the other M.O. has a higher energy than the higher of its components (this is an excited state). In general, if n A.O.s are combined, then there are n resultant M.O.s, and any two consecutive M.O.s embrace one of the contributing A.O.s (see Fig. 8).

It can now be seen that when two atoms combine to form a bond, two types of bonding are possible. In one M.O., the energy level is lower than either of its component A.O.s. In this M.O., the electron charge is concentrated in the region between the two nuclei, resulting in strong bonding between the atoms. This type of M.O. is called a bonding orbital or σ_g bond (Fig. 9a). As we have seen, a bonding orbital is formed by two electrons with their spins antiparallel. In the other M.O., the energy level is higher than either of its component A.O.s. In this M.O., the charge is pushed away from the region between the two nuclei, resulting in a nodal plane midway between A and B. In this condition A and B repel each other, and this M.O. is said to be anti-bonding or a σ_g bond (Fig. 9b). In an anti-bonding orbital, the two electrons have the same spin, and since negatively charged electrons repel each other, and since electrons with the same spin tend to keep as far away from each other as possible, the concentration of two such electrons in the internuclear region is reduced to such a great extent that there is no bonding between the two nuclei; the result is thus an anti-bond.

Any two A.O.s can be combined provided their energies are approximately the same. In the above example of bonding and anti-bonding orbitals, A and B were atoms with s electrons. Combination of two 2p electrons also gives one bonding and one anti-bonding orbital (Fig. 10a and b). In the bonding orbital, a π_u -bond, there is one nodal plane (which contains the molecular axis), but in the anti-bonding orbital, a π_g -bond, there are two nodal planes (one containing the



molecular axis, and the other perpendicular to it). It should here be noted that as the number of nodes in a bond increases, the energy level rises, and consequently the bond becomes weaker. When a molecule undergoes transitions from one energy level to another (with emission or absorption of light), a g state must go to a u state, or vice-versa. Transitions from one g state to another g state, and from one u state to another u state, are forbidden.

An important difference between V.B. and M.O. theories is that when dealing with energy levels of electrons in molecules, in the V.B. method, electrons are dealt with in pairs, whereas in the M.O. method, electrons can be dealt with

individually (see also p. 777).

THE GENERAL NATURE OF ORGANIC REACTIONS

Much work has been done on reaction mechanisms, i.e., the actual steps by which a reaction takes place. A chemical equation indicates the initial and final products of a reaction; rarely does it indicate how the reaction Many reactions take place via intermediates which may or may not have been isolated. When the products of a reaction are formed by a single collision of the reactant molecules, i.e., the reaction proceeds without any intermediates, the reaction is said to be a one-step (or elementary) reaction. Most reactions, however, are complex, i.e., they occur via a number of reaction steps. The rate of the overall reaction is controlled by the slowest step; this is known as the rate-determining step.

There is, in general, no one method that is satisfactory for the determination of mechanisms of reactions, but the use of a number of methods may lead to an acceptable answer. It should be borne in mind that mechanisms are, in general, theories that have been devised to explain the facts which have been obtained experimentally. Some of the commoner methods

used for elucidating mechanisms are:

(1) Kinetics. Kinetic studies are concerned with rates of reactions and provide the most general method for determining reaction mechanisms.

(2) The identification of all the products of a reaction.
(3) The detection, or better still (if it is possible), the isolation of intermediates.

(4) The effect on reaction rates of changing the structure of the reactants.

(5) The effect on reaction rates of changing the solvent.

(6) Stereochemical evidence. This type of approach can only be used

when dealing with optically active compounds.

(7) The use of isotopes. This method is particularly useful for tracing the part played by a particular atom in a reaction.

Applications of these methods are discussed in the text, but before ending this discussion, there are two other points of interest. One is the principle of microscopic reversibility. According to this principle, the mechanism of any reaction, under a given set of conditions, is identical in microscopic detail to that of the reverse reaction under the same conditions, except that it proceeds in the opposite way. With this principle it has been possible to deduce mechanisms where the forward or backward reactions do not lend themselves to kinetic studies (see, e.g., p. 70).

The other point is that when the various possible products of a reaction are not interconvertible under the conditions of the reaction, then the product formed most rapidly will be the one that predominates in the products. This most rapidly formed product is known as the kinetically controlled product. If, however, the possible products of the reaction are interconvertible under the reaction conditions, then the most stable product will predominate in the final products. This most stable product is known as the thermodynamically controlled product (see, e.g., p. 87).

Now let us examine in more detail what happens when molecules containing

covalent bonds undergo chemical reaction. Consider the reaction

$$Y + R - X \longrightarrow Y - R + X$$

where RX and RY are both covalent molecules. It can be seen that in this reaction, bond R-X has been broken and the new bond Y-R has been The mechanism of the reaction depends on the way in which these bonds are broken. There are three possible ways in which this may occur, and the result of much work has shown that the actual way in which the break occurs depends on the nature of R, X and Y, and the experimental conditions.

(i) Each atom (forming the X-R bond) retains one electron of the shared pair, i.e.,

$$X--R \longrightarrow X \cdot + R \cdot$$

This equation is usually written:

$$X-R \longrightarrow X \cdot + R \cdot$$

This gives rise to free radicals, and the breaking of the bond in this manner is known as homolytic fission (homolysis). Free radicals are odd electron molecules, e.g., methyl radical CH₃, triphenylmethyl radical (C₆H₅)₃C, etc. The majority are electrically neutral (a few free radical ions are known). All possess addition properties, and are extremely reactive; when a free radical is stable, its stability is believed to be due to resonance. Free radicals are paramagnetic, i.e., possess a small permanent magnetic moment, due to the presence of the odd (unpaired) electron. This property is used to detect the presence of free radicals. Diradicals are also known; these have an even number of electrons, but two are unpaired (see, e.g., methylene, anthracene). In general, free-radical reactions are catalysed or initiated by compounds which generate free radicals on decomposition, or by heat or light. Furthermore, a reaction which proceeds by a free-radical mechanism can be inhibited by the presence of compounds that are known to combine with free radicals. Another important characteristic is that a free-radical mechanism leads to abnormal orientation in aromatic substitution.

(ii) Atom (or group) R retains the shared pair. This may be represented as:

$$X|-R \longrightarrow X^{+} + :\bar{R}$$

This equation is now usually written:

$$X \xrightarrow{R} \longrightarrow X^+ + R^-$$

This is known as heterolytic fission (heterolysis), and Y is said to be an electrophilic (electron-seeking) or cationoid reagent, since it gains a share in the two electrons retained by R. Obviously an electrophilic reagent attacks a molecule at the point of high electron density. When an electrophilic reagent is involved in a substitution or a replacement reaction, that reaction is represented by $S_{\mathbb{R}}$ (S referring to substitution, and E to the electrophilic

reagent). When R: is a negative group in which the carbon atom carries the negative charge, *i.e.*, has an unshared pair of electrons, the group is known as a carbanion.

(iii) Atom (or group) R loses the shared pair, i.e., the shared pair remains with X. This may be represented as:

$$X-|R \longrightarrow \bar{X}: + \dot{\bar{R}}$$

$$X - |R \longrightarrow X^- + R^+$$

or

This also is heterolytic fission (heterolysis), and Y is said to be a nucleophilic (nucleus-seeking) or anionoid reagent, since it supplies the electron pair. Obviously a nucleophilic reagent attacks a molecule at the point of low electron density. When a nucleophilic reagent is involved in a substitution or a replacement reaction, that reaction is represented by S_N . When R^+ is a positive group in which the carbon atom carries the positive charge, i.e., lacks a pair of electrons in its valency shell, the group is known as a carbonium ion, and is in a trigonal state of hybridisation. Furthermore, such a carbonium ion is said to have a "classical" structure. There are, however, various cases where the ion is better represented as a bridged carbonium ion, and in these cases the ions are said to have a "non-classical" structure (see, e.g., p. 101).

Because of their positive charge, carbonium ions are very unstable, but they may be stabilised by delocalisation (i.e., by spreading) of the charge by means of solvation. Alternatively, the ion may be stabilised by delocalisation of the charge within the molecule by inductive and/or resonance effects. In certain cases, delocalisation may be the result of hyperconjugation (see p. 269).

Transition state theory of reactions. According to the collision theory of reactions, before molecules can enter into chemical reaction, they must collide and they must be activated, i.e., they must attain a certain amount of energy (E) above the average value. However, the rate of a reaction depends not only on the frequency of collisions in which the energy of activation is exceeded but also on whether the colliding molecules are suitably oriented with respect to each other for effective reaction to occur. This limitation is known as the probability or steric factor, and depends, for a given type of reaction, on the geometry of the reacting molecules. A simple example of the steric factor is that in the reaction

$$2HI \longrightarrow H_2 + I_2$$

If hydrogen iodide decomposes on collision, then activated molecules can collide in one of two ways, the "right" way leading to decomposition, and the "wrong" way leading to merely a "change in partners".

One can expect that when various paths are possible for a given reaction under given conditions, then the path actually followed will be the one requiring the lowest energy of activation. The problem therefore is to try to work out the path that requires the minimum energy of activation.

The transition state theory of reactions does not use the simple idea of collision, but considers how the potential energy of a system of atoms and/or molecules varies as the molecules are brought together. Consider the reaction

$$A + BC \longrightarrow AB + C$$

This is known as a three-centre reaction. London (1929), by making certain approximations, showed that the minimum energy required in a three-centre reaction is when the reaction proceeds by an end-on approach, i.e., in the above reaction, the approach of A to BC requiring the minimum activation energy is for A to approach BC along the bonding line of BC and on the side remote from C:

$$A \longrightarrow B - C \longrightarrow A - B + C$$

In this three-centre reaction, the value of the activation energy depends on four factors: (i) The strength of the B—C bond. The stronger this is, the greater will be E. (ii) The repulsion between A and BC. The greater this repulsion, the greater will be E. (iii) The repulsion between AB and C. The greater this repulsion, the greater will be E. (iv) The strength of the A—B bond. The greater the strength of this bond, the lower be E.

Since most reactions are carried out in solution, another factor affecting the

value of E is solvation of molecules and ions.

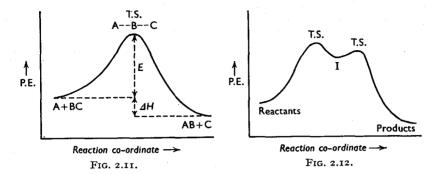
When we consider the mechanism of activation of this three-centre reaction, we can imagine that there are two extreme cases possible: (i) A is forced up against the repulsion of BC until it is close enough to compete with B on equal terms with C, which is finally expelled. (ii) BC acquires so much energy that the bond B—C is broken, and then A and C combine without any opposition.

Polanyi et al. (1931–1938) amplified London's ideas into the transition state theory. These authors showed by mathematical treatment that the lowest value of E is obtained when the reaction proceeds through a compromise between the two extremes (i) and (ii) mentioned above. A approaches BC along the bonding line of BC remote from C, and is forced against the repulsion of BC, and at the same time bond BC stretches until A and C can compete on equal terms for B. Thus a point is reached when the distances A—B and B—C are such that the forces between each pair are the same. This condition is the transition state (activated complex); in this state neither molecule AB nor BC exists independently. The system can now proceed in either direction to form A and BC or AB and C. This sequence of events may be represented by the following equation (T.S. = transition state):

$$\begin{array}{c} A + BC \longrightarrow A \cdots B \cdots C \longrightarrow AB + C \\ T.S. \end{array}$$

It should be noted that the *new* bond is formed on the side opposite to that of the *original* bond (which was broken). Thus the original molecule is turned "inside out", *i.e.*, *inverted* when the new molecule is formed. This inversion may be observed if B contains an asymmetric carbon atom (see the Walden inversion, p. 413).

The above sequence of events may also be represented graphically by means of an *energy profile diagram* (Fig. 11). This diagram is obtained by plotting the potential energy (P.E.) of the system against the reaction co-ordinates (the various distances between the nuclei of A, B and C).



E is the activation energy, and ΔH is the heat of reaction at constant pressure. It is assumed that the reaction rate is given by the rate at which the reactant molecules pass through the transition state. For a given shaped "hump", the lower it lies (i.e., the lower the energy barrier is), the easier it is for the reactant molecules to enter the transition state. Also, the wider the hump for a given height, the easier it is for the reactant molecules to enter the transition state, since there is now a wider latitude in nuclei positions for the activated complex.

The activated complex is not a true molecule; it contains partial bonds, and the energy content of the system is a maximum. Its life is extremely short, and hence it cannot be isolated; it is always decomposing into reactants or products. The reaction, however, if complex, will proceed through true intermediates which possess some measure of stability, and if this is great enough, the intermediates may be isolated. If the reaction proceeds through a true intermediate (I) (Fig. 12), there will be a minimum in the energy profile diagram. The greater the dip, the more stable will be the intermediate, and conversely, the shallower the dip, the less stable will be the intermediate. In the extreme case, the dip may be so shallow that the intermediate is indistinguishable from the transition state. It should be noted here that each intermediate has its own transition state, and it appears that it is usual to assume that the structure of the transition state closely resembles the structure of the intermediate (i.e., the product of that step). There is, however, evidence to show that in some cases the transition state may be closer to the parent system than to the intermediate (or product).

Use of isotopes in organic chemistry. In recent years the use of isotopes has been extremely helpful in the study of reaction mechanisms and rearrangements, in the elucidation of structures, and also in quantitative analysis. The application of isotopes in biochemistry has also been particularly fruitful, since they offer a means of identifying intermediates and the "brickwork" of the final products. The common isotopes that have been used in organic chemistry are: deuterium (²H, D; stable), tritium (³H, T; radioactive), ¹³C (stable), ¹⁴C (radioactive), ¹⁵N (stable), ¹⁸O (stable), ³²P (radioactive), ³⁵S (radioactive), ³⁷Cl (stable), ⁸²Br (radioactive), ¹³¹I (radioactive).

Various methods of analysis are used. Radioactive isotopes are usually analysed with the Geiger-Müller counter, and the stable isotopes by means of the mass spectrograph. Deuterium is often determined by means of infrared spectroscopy; and there are also the older methods for deuterium and ¹⁸O of density, or refractive index measurements (of the water produced after combustion of the compound). A new method is that of nuclear

magnetic resonance, this technique being applicable only to those isotopes having nuclear magnetic moments, e.g., D, T, ¹³C and ¹⁵N.

Isotopes are usually used as tracers, i.e., the starting material is labelled at some particular position, and after reaction the labelled atom is then located in the product. This does not mean that labelled compounds contain 100 per cent. of the isotope, but that they usually contain an abnormal amount of the isotope. Many examples of the use of isotopic indicators will be found in the text (see Index, Isotopic indicators).

The use of isotopes, stable or radioactive, is based on the fact that the chemical behaviour of any particular isotope is the same as that of the other atoms isotopic with it (the chemical properties of an element depend on the nuclear positive charge and the number of electrons surrounding the nucleus, and not on the number of neutrons in the nucleus). This identity in chemical behaviour is essentially true for the heavy atoms, but in the case of the lightest elements, reactions involving heavier isotopes are slower, but so long as identical paths are followed, the final result is unaffected. This difference in rates of reaction of isotopes is known as the kinetic isotope effect, and the magnitude of such effects depends on the weight ratio of the isotopes Thus the kinetic isotope effect is greatest with H and D (and T). The kinetic effect has been widely used to study reaction mechanisms, since this difference in rate is significant when the bond attaching the isotopic atom is stretched in the activated state, e.g., a protonated molecule may react about seven times as fast as the corresponding deuterium compound.

Ion accelerators and nuclear reactors produce, as by-products, artificial isotopes, particularly those which are radioactive. These isotopes are then supplied in the form of some compound from which a labelled compound can be synthesised, e.g., ¹⁴C is usually supplied as Ba¹⁴CO₃, ¹⁵N as ¹⁵NH₄Cl, etc. A simple example of the synthesis of a labelled compound is that of acetic

acid (in the following equations, which involve a Grignard reagent, C is 14C; this is a common method of representing a tracer atom, provided its nature has been specified).

$$Ba\ddot{C}O_{3} + 2HCI \longrightarrow BaCl_{2} + H_{2}O + \ddot{C}O_{2}$$

$$(i) \qquad \ddot{C}O_{2} + CH_{3}MgI \longrightarrow CH_{3}\dot{C}O_{2}H$$

$$(ii) \qquad \ddot{C}O_{2} + 3H_{2} \xrightarrow{\text{catalyst}} H_{2}O + \ddot{C}H_{3}OH \xrightarrow{I_{3}/P} \ddot{C}H_{3}I \xrightarrow{Mg} \ddot{C}H_{3}MgI$$

$$\downarrow^{CO_{3}} \qquad \downarrow^{CO_{4}}$$

$$\downarrow^{CO_{4}} \qquad \downarrow^{CO_{4}}$$

In a number of cases, an exchange reaction is a very simple means of preparing a labelled compound, e.g., dissolving a fatty acid in water enriched with deuterium.

$$R \cdot CO_2H + D_2O \Longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2D + DHO$$

Because of the possibility of this exchange reaction, it is often necessary to

carry out control experiments.

Isotopes are also very useful in the analysis of mixtures, particularly for the determination of the yield of products in a chemical reaction when isolation is difficult. A simple method is that of isotopic dilution. labelled compound is prepared, and a known amount is then added to the mixture to be analysed. A portion of the substance is now taken and analysed for its isotopic content. From a knowledge of the isotopic content of the labelled compound added and recovered, and the weight of the labelled compound added, it is thus possible to calculate the weight of the labelled compound in the mixture. This method can only be used as long as there is no isotopic exchange during the isolation.

READING REFERENCES *

Sidgwick, Electronic Theory of Valency, Oxford Press (1927).

Watson, Modern Theories of Organic Chemistry, Oxford Press (1941, 2nd ed.). Remick, Electronic Interpretations of Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1943). Pauling, The Nature of the Chemical Bond, Cornell University Press (1960, 3rd ed.).

Hammett, Physical Organic Chemistry, McGraw-Hill (1940).

Branch and Calvin, The Theory of Organic Chemistry (An Advanced Course), Prentice-

Hall (1941).
Dewar, The Electronic Theory of Organic Chemistry, Oxford Press (1949).

Walsh, Remarks on the Strengths of Bonds, Trans. Faraday Soc., 1947, 43, 60 (also

Walsh, Remarks on the Strengths of Bonds, Trans. Faraday Soc., 1947, 43, 60 (also pp. 158, 342).

Coulson, Representation of Simple Molecules by Molecular Orbitals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1947, 1, 144.

Coulson, Valence, Oxford Press (1961, 2nd ed.).

Wheland, Resonance in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1955).

Wheland, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1960, 3rd ed.).

Ferguson, Electronic Structures of Organic Molecules, Prentice-Hall (1952).

Hermans, Theoretical Organic Chemistry, Elsevier (1954).

Ingold, Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry, Bell and Sons (1953).

Cartmell and Fowles, Valency and Molecular Structure, Butterworths (1956).

Hine Physical Organic Chemistry McGraw-Hill (1962, 2nd ed.).

Hine, Physical Organic Chemistry, McGraw-Hill (1962, 2nd ed.). Gould, Mechanism and Structure in Organic Chemistry, Holt and Co. (1959).

Pimental and McClellan, The Hydrogen Bond, Freeman and Co. (1960). Leffler, The Reactive Intermediates of Organic Chemistry, Interscience (1956).

Dickens and Linnett, Electron Correlation and Chemical Consequences, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 291.

Gillespie and Nyholm, Inorganic Stereochemistry, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 339.

Bent, Distribution of Atomic s Character in Molecules and its Chemical Implications, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 616.

Sanderson, Principles of Chemical Bonding, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 382.

Orville-Thomas, Nuclear Quadruple Coupling and Chemical Bonding, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Sco.), 1962, 37, 266.

(Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 162.
Pople, The Molecular-Orbital and Equivalent Orbital Approach to Molecular Structure,

ibid., 1957, II, 273.

Arnstein and Bentley, Isotopic Tracer Technique, ibid., 1950, 4, 172.

Thomas and Turner, The Syntheses of Isotopically Labelled Organic Compounds,

ibid., 1953, 7, 407. Gold and Satchell, The Principles of Hydrogen Isotope Exchange Reactions in Solution,

ibid., 1955, 9, 51. Semenow and Roberts, Uses of Isotopes in Organic Chemistry, J. Chem. Educ., 1956,

33, 2 Popjak, Chemistry, Biochemistry, and Isotopic Tracer Technique, Lectures, Monographs and Reports of the Royal Institute of Chemistry, 1955, No. 2.

* Books which deal with the electronic theories of organic chemistry will not be given as reading references in subsequent chapters in this book. The reader should always be prepared to refer to them on any matter dealing with mechanisms.

CHAPTER III

ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS

PARAFFINS

ALIPHATIC compounds are *open-chain* or *acyclic* compounds, and the name aliphatic arises from the fact that the first compounds of this class to be studied were the fatty acids (Greek: *aliphos*, fat).

Carbon forms a large number of compounds with hydrogen only and these are known collectively as hydrocarbons. There are two groups of hydro-

carbons: (i) saturated hydrocarbons; (ii) unsaturated hydrocarbons.

The paraffin hydrocarbons or the paraffins are the saturated hydrocarbons. Many occur naturally, and the chief source of the paraffins is mineral oil or

petroleum, which occurs in many parts of the world.

The simplest paraffin is **methane**, CH_4 , which occurs in "natural gas" (q.v.) and the gases from oil-wells. Methane is the principal product of organic decay in swamps and marshes, the gas being set free by the action of bacteria; this method of formation in nature has given rise to the name "marsh-gas" for methane. Sewage sludge which has been fermented by bacteria yields a gas containing about 70 per cent. methane, and this is used as a liquid fuel. Methane also forms about 40 per cent. by volume of coal-gas.

Methane may be synthesised as follows:

(i) By striking an electric arc between carbon electrodes in an atmosphere of hydrogen. Only a very small amount of methane is obtained in this way.

(ii) A mixture of carbon and reduced nickel is heated at 475° in the pre-

sence of hydrogen.

(iii) The first synthesis of methane was carried out by Berthelot in 1856, who passed a mixture of carbon disulphide and hydrogen sulphide over heated copper:

$$CS_2 + 2H_2S + 8Cu \longrightarrow CH_4 + 4Cu_2S$$

(iv) A mixture of carbon monoxide or dioxide and hydrogen is passed over finely divided nickel heated at about 300°:

$$\begin{array}{c} CO + 3H_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + H_2O \\ CO_2 + 4H_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O \end{array}$$

This synthesis is due to Sabatier and Senderens (1897). Until recently the nickel catalyst was usually prepared by reducing with hydrogen nickel oxide deposited on a suitable inert, porous support, e.g., kieselguhr. The support is impregnated with a nickel salt, treated with sodium hydroxide, washed and dried, and the resulting nickel oxide reduced with hydrogen at 300–450°. Many organic compounds may be reduced by passing their vapours mixed with hydrogen over nickel heated at 200–300°. Any reduction that is carried out in this manner is referred to as the Sabatier-Senderens reduction, in honour of the workers who first introduced this method. It is quite a common feature in organic chemistry to name a reaction after its discoverer or, in certain cases, after a worker who investigated the reaction and extended its application. The reader should always make himself familiar with the reaction associated with a particular name.

The most common nickel catalyst used to-day is that prepared by the method introduced by Raney (1927). An alloy containing equal amounts of nickel and aluminium is digested with sodium hydroxide; the aluminium

is dissolved away, and the residual very finely divided nickel is washed and stored under water, ethanol, or any other suitable liquid. Raney nickel is more reactive than the supported nickel catalyst, and is usually

effective at lower temperatures, often at room temperature.

None of the syntheses described above is of any practical importance as a method of preparing methane in quantity. The following methods are those which may be used in the laboratory, i.e., convenient methods of preparing methane in reasonable quantities. The degree of purity of the product depends on the particular method used. Quite often it is the purification of the crude product which causes an appreciable loss of material, and the more we aim at getting the "pure" compound, the smaller is the final yield.

final yield.

1. The most convenient method is to heat a mixture of anhydrous sodium

acetate and soda-lime:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + NaOH(CaO) \longrightarrow CH_4 + Na_2CO_3$$

In chemical reactions soda-lime behaves as sodium hydroxide (or calcium hydroxide); it is not deliquescent and does not attack glass, and is therefore more convenient to use than solid sodium hydroxide.

2. By boiling aluminium carbide with water:

$$Al_4C_3 + 12H_2O \longrightarrow 3CH_4 + 4Al(OH)_3$$

The methane is impure; it contains hydrogen.

3. Almost pure methane (it contains traces of hydrogen) is obtained by the reduction of methyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

$$CH_3I + 2[H] \longrightarrow CH_4 + HI$$

A common method for generating hydrogen uses zinc and acetic acid saturated with hydrogen chloride, or hydrochloric acid alone, or with aqueous sodium hydroxide. Another useful method is by the action of a zinc-copper couple on ethanol.

Lithium aluminium hydride or lithium hydride may also be used for

reducing alkyl bromides.

4. By the action of water on:

(a) dimethylzinc, $(CH_3)_2Zn + 2H_2O \longrightarrow 2CH_4 + Zn(OH)_2$

(b) Methylmagnesium iodide,

$$CH_3 - Mg - I + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_4 + MgI(OH).$$

Method (b) is far more convenient than (a). Methylmagnesium iodide is a member of a group of compounds known as the *Grignard reagents* (p. 348).

Methane is obtained in vast quantities from natural gas, gas from the

oil-wells, and from cracked petroleum (q.v.).

Properties of methane. Methane is a colourless, odourless, non-poisonous gas; its b.p. is $-164^{\circ}/760$ mm., and m.p. -184° . It is somewhat soluble in water, 100 ml. of water dissolving about 5 ml. of methane at 20°; but is quite soluble in ethanol and ether. It burns with a non-luminous flame in air or oxygen, forming carbon dioxide and water:

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$$

It explodes violently when mixed with air (or oxygen) and ignited, and this is believed to be the cause of explosions in coal-mines, where methane is known as *fire-damp*. Methane may be *catalytically* oxidised to methanol and formaldehyde.

Substitution reactions of methane. Chlorine has no action on methane in the dark. In bright sunlight the reaction is explosive, and hydrogen chloride and carbon are formed:

$$CH_4 + 2Cl_2 \longrightarrow C + 4HCl$$

In diffused sunlight no explosion occurs, but a series of reactions takes place whereby the four hydrogen atoms in methane are successively replaced by chlorine atoms:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_4} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_3Cl} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{methyl} \text{ chloride} \\ \operatorname{CH_3Cl} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_2Cl_2} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{methylene} \text{ chloride} \\ \operatorname{CH_2Cl_2} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CHCl_3} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{chloroform} \\ \operatorname{CHCl_3} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CCl_4} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{carbon} \text{ tetrachloride} \\ \end{array}$$

In methane the four carbon valencies are satisfied by combination with four hydrogen atoms. Carbon never exhibits a valency of more than four, and so cannot combine with more than four hydrogen atoms or four other univalent atoms or groups. Hence in the reaction with chlorine, the hydrogen atoms are displaced, and chlorine atoms take their place. This type of reaction is known as substitution, and is the direct replacement of hydrogen by some other atom or group. The products so formed are known as substitution products. The atom or group that has replaced the hydrogen atom is called the substituent, and when a substituent atom or group is replaced by some other atom or group, the reaction is referred to as a replacement (or displacement) reaction. It should be noted that in substitution or replacement reactions there is no change in structure. The spatial arrangement of the molecule, however, may have changed (see p. 413).

In the substitution reaction between methane and chlorine, all four substitution products are obtained, since it is impossible to stop the reaction at any particular stage. It has been found possible, however, to control

the reaction so as to obtain mainly methyl chloride (q.v.).

Methane also undergoes substitution with bromine, but the reaction is less vigorous than that with chlorine. With iodine the reaction is reversible:

$$CH_4 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons CH_3I + HI$$

The equilibrium lies almost completely on the left, and consequently the yield of methyl iodide is negligible. On the other hand, in the presence of an oxidising agent, e.g., iodic acid, nitric acid, mercuric oxide, etc., the reaction proceeds to the right, since the equilibrium is upset by the removal of the hydrogen iodide which is oxidised, e.g.,

$$5HI + HIO_3 \longrightarrow 3I_2 + 3H_2O$$

Methane reacts explosively with gaseous fluorine. The initial reaction is possibly:

$$CH_4 + 2F_2 \longrightarrow C + 4HF$$

Structure of methane. The molecular formula of methane is CH₄. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon and the univalency of hydrogen, we find that there is only one structure possible for methane, viz., (I). Study of the reactions of methane shows that all four hydrogen atoms are equivalent,

e.g., methylene chloride, CH₂Cl₂, prepared by totally different methods, is always the same. Thus (II) and (III) are different ways of writing the same structure. At first sight it may appear that these two structural formulæ are different. They are different if the molecule is two-dimensional, but, as we have seen (p. 25), in saturated compounds the four valencies of carbon are arranged tetrahedrally. Examination of the two structures as tetrahedral figures shows that they are identical.* The chief disadvantage of the plane-structural formula is that it does not show the spatial arrangement of the atoms. On the other hand, the three-dimensional structural formula is cumbersome, and for many complicated molecules cannot easily be drawn on paper. Hence we usually adopt the plane-formulæ when dealing with compounds from the point of view of their structure; only when we wish to stress the spatial arrangement of the atoms or groups in a molecule do we resort to solid diagrams (see, e.g., Ch. XVII). How we show the relative positions of the various atoms or groups in the plane-structural formula of a given compound usually depends on ourselves, but where possible the simplest method of writing the structure should be chosen. Consider I:5-dichloropentane, C₅H₁₀Cl₂. This is a "straight" chain compound, and its structural formula is usually written CH₂Cl-CH₂·CH₂

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} + \text{ZnCl}_2$$

Thus "straight" chains may be "bent" to stress a particular point we may have in mind.

Uses of methane. (i) When heated at 1000°, methane is decomposed into carbon and hydrogen:

$$CH_4 \longrightarrow C + 2H_2$$

The carbon is formed in a very finely divided state, and is known as *carbon black*. This is used in making printers' ink and paints; it is also used in the rubber industry for motor tyres, etc.

(ii) Methane is used as a source of hydrogen (for synthetic ammonia and for synthesis gas). Methane is mixed with steam and passed over nickel supported on alumina heated at 725°:

$$CH_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow CO + 3H_2$$

(iii) For the technical preparation of methyl chloride and methylene chloride (q.v.).

(iv) For the technical preparation of methanol and formaldehyde (q.v.).

(v) As a liquid fuel.

Ethane, C₂H₆, occurs with methane in natural gas and the gases from the oil-wells. It is formed to a slight extent when an electric arc is struck between carbon rods in an atmosphere of hydrogen. It may be prepared by any of the following methods:

I. By reduction of ethyl iodide with nascent hydrogen using, for

example, the zinc-copper couple and ethanol:

$$C_2H_5I + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + HI$$

* "Atomic models" are very useful to the organic chemist. Sets of these models may be bought; alternatively the reader can build his models from plasticine and matchsticks, which provide crude but usually satisfactory models.

The ethane is contaminated with traces of hydrogen:

$$Zn/Cu + 2C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow H_2 + (C_2H_5O)_2Zn + Cu$$

2. By treating a dry ethereal solution of methyl iodide with sodium:

$$2CH_3I + 2Na \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + 2NaI$$

This is an example of the *Wurtz* reaction. It is not so straightforward as the equation indicates; other products are obtained in addition to ethane (see p. 51).

3. By the electrolysis of a concentrated solution of sodium or potassium acetate. A mixture of ethane and carbon dioxide is evolved at the anode, and hydrogen is evolved at the cathode:

$$2CH_3\cdot CO_2Na + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + 2CO_2 + 2NaOH + H_2$$

This means of preparation is an example of Kolbe's electrolytic method. The ethane may be freed from carbon dioxide by washing the mixture with aqueous sodium hydroxide, but still contains other impurities (see p. 52).

4. Pure ethane may be obtained by the action of water on ethyl-

magnesium iodide (a Grignard reagent):

$$C_2H_5$$
— Mg — $I + H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + MgI(OH)$

5. The best way of preparing pure ethane in large quantity is by the catalytic hydrogenation of ethylene:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow{N_i} C_2H_6$$

Properties of ethane. Ethane is a colourless gas, b.p. -89° , sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol. It burns in air or oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water:

$$2C_2H_6 + 7O_2 \longrightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O$$

It reacts with halogens in a similar manner to methane to form substitution products, but a much greater number of products are possible due, firstly to the presence of six hydrogen atoms in ethane compared with four in methane, and secondly, to the fact that isomerism is possible in the substitution products of ethane, and not in those of methane. Thus, for example, two dichloroethanes are possible: $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$ and $CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$ (see later).

Structure of ethane. The molecular formula of ethane is C_2H_6 . Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon and the univalency of hydrogen, the only possible structure for ethane is (I). This structure agrees with all the known properties of ethane. Writing the structural formula of ethane in the bond-diagram way uses up a lot of space. Hence it has become customary to use a "contracted" structural formula: CH_3 — CH_3 or CH_3 · CH_3 or CH_3 · CH_3 . The reader should make himself familiar with these different ways of writing structural formulæ as soon as possible.

Propane. C₃H₈ is a constituent of natural gas and gas from the oilwells. It may be prepared by the following methods:

1. By reduction of propyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

$$C_3H_7I + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/Cu} C_3H_8 + HI$$

2. By the Wurtz reaction, using a mixture of methyl and ethyl halides, e.g.,

$$CH_3Br + CH_3 \cdot CH_2Br + 2Na \xrightarrow{ether} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 + 2NaBr$$

The yield of propane is poor, since ethane and butane, C₄H₁₀ (as well as other compounds), are obtained as by-products:

$$\begin{array}{c} 2CH_3Br + 2Na \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + 2NaBr \\ 2C_2H_5Br + 2Na \longrightarrow C_4H_{10} + 2NaBr \end{array}$$

3. By Kolbe's electrolytic method, using a mixture of sodium acetate and sodium propionate:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + C_2H_5 \cdot CO_2Na + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_3H_8 + 2CO_2 + 2NaOH + H_2$$

Apart from other products, ethane and butane are obtained in relatively large quantities, resulting in a poor yield of propane (cf. 2 above).

4. By the action of water on propylmagnesium iodide:

$$C_3H_7$$
— Mg — $I + H_2O \longrightarrow C_3H_8 + MgI(OH)$

Properties of propane. Propane is a colourless gas, b.p. -44.5°. It

resembles methane and ethane in many of its chemical properties.

Structure of propane. The molecular formula of propane is C_3H_8 . ing the quadrivalency of carbon and univalency of hydrogen, the only possible structure for propane is CH₃·CH₂·CH₃. This structure agrees with all the known properties of propane.

Butanes, C₄H₁₀. Theoretical consideration of this formula shows that

two structures are possible:

(I) has a straight chain, and (II) a branched chain. Both isomers are known, and thus "butane" is the first paraffin to exhibit structural isomerism. This is an example of chain or nuclear isomerism, and is characterised by the manner of linking of the carbon chain. (I) is known as normal butane, and (II) as isobutane. Both occur in natural gas and in petroleum gas, and they may be separated by fractional distillation under pressure.

normal Butane may be prepared by the Wurtz reaction using ethyl iodide:

$$2CH_3\cdot CH_2I + 2Na \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} CH_3\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_3 + 2NaI$$

It is a colourless gas, b.p. -0.5°.

isoButane may be prepared by reducing tertiary butyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

$$(CH_3)_3CI + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/Cu} (CH_3)_3CH + HI$$

It is a colourless gas, b.p. -10.2°.

Examination of the two butane structures shows that all the carbon atoms are not equivalent, and also that all the hydrogen atoms are not equivalent. A primary carbon atom is one that is joined to one other carbon atom; a secondary carbon atom to two other carbon atoms; and a tertiary carbon atom to three other carbon atoms. Hydrogen atoms joined to primary, secondary and tertiary carbon atoms are known as primary, secondary, or tertiary hydrogen atoms, respectively. Thus normal butane contains two primary carbon atoms, two secondary carbon atoms, six primary and four secondary hydrogen atoms. isoButane contains three primary carbon atoms, one tertiary carbon atom, nine primary hydrogen atoms, and one tertiary hydrogen atom. As we shall see later, the behaviour of these various types of hydrogen atoms differs considerably.

Pentanes, C₅H₁₂. Three pentanes are possible theoretically, and all are

known.

Structure. CH ₃ ·CH ₂ ·CH ₂ ·CH ₃ ·CH ₃	Name. normal pentane	<i>b.ф.</i> 36°
CH ₃ CH·CH ₂ ·CH ₃	isopentane	28°
CH ₃ -C-CH ₃ CH ₃	<i>neo</i> pentane	9 · 4°

All the pentanes occur in natural gas and petroleum gas. neoPentane contains a quaternary carbon atom, i.e., a carbon atom joined to four other carbon atoms.

As the number of carbon atoms in the paraffin increases, the number of possible isomers increases rapidly, e.g., the paraffin $C_{15}H_{32}$ can exist in 4347 isomeric forms. The number of isomers of a given paraffin may be calculated by means of mathematical formulæ; in most cases very few have actually been prepared.

Nomenclature of the Paraffins

Whenever a new branch of knowledge is opened up, there is always the problem of introducing a system of nomenclature. The early chemists usually named a compound on the basis of its history, e.g., methane. This is the parent hydrocarbon of methyl alcohol, CH₃OH. Methyl alcohol was originally obtained by the destructive distillation of wood, and was named "wood-spirit". From this arose the word methyl, which is a combination of two Greek words, methu (wine) and hule (wood). Other examples of this way of naming compounds are acetic acid, which is the chief constituent of vinegar (Latin: acetum, vinegar); malic acid, which was first isolated from apples (Latin: malum, apple), and so on. Thus grew up a system of common or trivial names, and in many cases the origin of the name has been forgotten. One advantage of the trivial system is that the names are usually short and easily remembered, but a disadvantage is that a particular compound may have a number of names.

As the number of known organic compounds increased, it became apparent that it was necessary to systematise the method of nomenclature. The most satisfactory system is one which indicates the structure of the compound. This task was originally begun in 1892 by an international committee of chemists at Geneva, and hence is referred to as the Geneva system of nomenclature. The work was carried on by the International Union of Chemists (I.U.C.) by a committee appointed in 1922, and in 1931 these

drew up a report which is often referred to as the I.U.C. system. Nomenclature is always undergoing revision, and the latest rules are those recommended in 1957 by the Commission on the Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (I.U.P.A.C.). Various changes have been made, but two that have not been incorporated into this book are: (i) Numbers indicating the positions of substituents are to be separated by commas (not by colons as used in this book). (ii) Prefixes are to be italicised when they define the positions of named substituents or which are used to define stereoisomers (see p. 46). The reader should always consult the Chemical Society Handbook if he wishes to publish work in the Journal, and any mistakes he makes in nomenclature will soon be put right by the Editors!

Dyson (1946) has developed "a new notation for organic chemistry". This scheme does not provide a new means of *naming* compounds, but shows how it is possible to portray the structure of an organic compound irrespec-

tive of its complexity, and how it may be used for indexing.

There are at least three systems in use for naming paraffins, and in all three the class-suffix, i.e., the ending of the name which indicates the particular homologous series (see later), is -ane.

I. In the trivial system of nomenclature the straight-chain compounds are always designated as *normal* compounds, and the word *normal* is usually abbreviated to n-. If the compound contains the grouping $(CH_3)_2C$ —H, it is known as the *iso*-compound; if it contains a quaternary carbon atom, the compound is known as the *neo*-compound. It is impossible to name many of the more complex paraffins by the trivial system (see later for examples of the trivial system).

The first four paraffins have special names (related to their history); from the fifth member onwards, Latin or Greek numerals are used to indicate

the number of carbon atoms in the molecule.

	Nai	ne.			Formula.	Na	ıme.			Formula.
methane					CH₄	hexadecane				C16H34
ethane					C ₂ H ₆	heptadecane		•		$C_{17}H_{36}$
propane			•		C_3H_8	octadecane	•		•	$C_{18}H_{38}$
butane			•		C_4H_{10}	nonadecane		•	•	C19H40
pentane					C_5H_{12}	eicosane .		•		C20H42
hexane					C_6H_{14}	heneicosan e	•	•	•	C21H44
heptane					$C_{7}H_{16}$	$\mathbf{docosane}$.		•		C22H46
octane		• *			C_8H_{18}	tricosane, etc.		•	•	C ₂₃ H ₄₈ , etc.
nonane					C_9H_{20}	triacontane	•	•	•	C30H62
decane					$C_{10}H_{22}$	hexatriaconta	ne	•	•	C36H74
undecane	5				C11H24	tetracontane	•	•	•	C40H82
hendecane	ر.	•	•	•		pentacontane		•	٠	C ₅₀ H ₁₀₂
dodecane					$C_{12}H_{26}$	hexacontane	•	•	•	C60H122
tridecane					$C_{13}H_{28}$	heptacontane	•	•	•	C70H142
tetradecar	ıe	•	•		$C_{14}H_{30}$	octacontane		•	•	C ₈₀ H ₁₆₂
pentadeca	ne	•	•		$C_{15}H_{32}$					

Univalent radicals that are formed by the removal of one hydrogen atom from a paraffin are known as *alkyl* or *alphyl* radicals or groups. The name of each individual radical is obtained by changing the suffix -ane of the parent hydrocarbon into -yl. The first five alkyl radicals are often represented by a shorthand notation.

The radical derived from pentane has, in the past, been usually named amyl. This name is now abandoned and pentyl and isopentyl are to be

used.

The paraffins are also known as the alkanes, since an alkyl radical plus one hydrogen atom gives a paraffin, i.e., alkyl + H = alkane.

In chemical equations, if we are dealing with alkyl compounds as a group

Paraffin.	Radical.	Short-hand notation.
methane ethane	. methyl CH_3 — . ethyl C_2H_5 —	Me Et
propane	· { n-propyl CH ₃ ·CH ₂ ·CH ₂ · isopropyl CH ₃ ·CH·CH ₃	n-Pr, Pra, or Pr
	isopropyl CH ₃ ·CH·CH ₃	isoPr, Prβ, or Pri
	n-butyl CH3·CH2·CH2·CH2—	n-Bu, Buα, or Bu
butane	n-butyl CH ₃ ·CH ₂ ·CH ₂ ·CH ₂ . secbutyl CH ₃ ·CH ₂ ·CH·CH ₃	secBu, Bu\beta, Bu\s, or s-Bu
	iso-butyl (CH ₃) ₂ CH·CH ₂ — tertbutyl (CH ₃) ₃ C—	isoBu or Bu ^t tertBu, Bu ^t , or t-Bu
pentane .	$ \begin{cases} \text{amyl CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 - \\ \text{isoamyl (CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 - \end{cases} $	n-Am isoAm or Ami

and we do not wish to specify any particular member, we use the symbol R to represent the unspecified alkyl radical, e.g., RCl represents any alkyl chloride

2. In this system of nomenclature the hydrocarbon, except the *n*-compound, is regarded as a substitution product of methane. The most highly branched carbon atom in the compound is named as the methane nucleus, and the alkyl groups attached to this carbon atom are named in order of increasing molecular weight of the groups (or in alphabetical order). If two groups have the same molecular weight, the simpler is named before the more complex, *e.g.*, propyl before *iso*propyl. Hydrogen atoms, if joined to the carbon atom chosen as the methane nucleus, are not named. Since April, 1950, however, the *Chemical Society* has adopted an alphabetical order for prefixes denoting substituents. This order follows in general that adopted in *Chemical Abstracts* except for differences in nomenclature, spelling, italicising, or punctuation. *Italicised prefixes* are neglected when assembling substituents, *e.g.*, *iso*butyl will be named before ethyl. Isomeric substituents, however, are arranged in alphabetical order of the italicised prefixes, except that *iso* follows directly after *n*, *e.g.*, *n*-butyl, *iso*butyl, *sec.*-butyl, *tert.*-butyl.

In the I.U.P.A.C. rules, however, the prefixes n, iso, sec., tert., neo, cyclo, epi, allo, etc., are no longer to be italicised, i.e., they are to be written n, iso, n, they are to be written n, iso, n, the alphabetical order of prefixes follows the first roman letter, e.g., ethyl, isobutyl, etc. (see appendix for further information on nomenclature).

This system of nomenclature is fairly good, since the name indicates the structure of the compound. It is impossible, however, to name the complex

paraffins by this system.

3. In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature the longest chain possible is chosen, and the compound is named as a derivative of this *n*-hydrocarbon. The carbon chain is numbered from one end to the other by arabic numerals, and the positions of *side-chains* are indicated by numbers, the direction of numbering being so chosen as to give the lowest numbers possible to the side-chains. When series of locants containing the same number of terms are compared term by term, that series is "lowest" which contains the lowest number on occasion of the first difference, and this principle is used irrespective of the nature of the substituents, *e.g.*,

This is named 2:7:8-trimethyldecane and not 3:4:9-trimethyldecane; the first set is "lower" than the second set because at the first difference 2 is less than 3. When two sets of numbers are equally possible, then the

order of the prefixes in the name decides which shall be used, e.g., 1-bromo-3-chloropropane and not 3-bromo-I-chloropropane. It should also be noted that the names of prefixes are arranged alphabetically, regardless of the number of each, e.g., 5-ethyl-2: 3-dimethyloctane.

The I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature is undoubtedly superior to the

other two, since it permits the naming of any paraffin on sight.

The following are examples of the three systems of nomenclature:

N.B. The following names are retained for unsubstituted hydrocarbons only: isobutane, isopentane, neopentane, isohexane.

When several chains are of equal length, that chain chosen goes in series to: (a) the chain which has the greatest number of side-chains; (b) the chain whose side-chains have the lowest-numbered locants; (c) the chain having the greatest number of carbon atoms in the smaller side-chains; (d) the chain having the least-branched side-chains. Also, where there is a side-chain within a side-chain, the latter is also numbered, and the name of the complex radical is considered to begin with the first letter of its complete name, e.g.,

$$\overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3}\overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}} - \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}} - \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}} - \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}} \cdot \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \qquad \text{4-ethyl-2:3:5-}$$

$$\overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_2} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_2} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_2} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_2} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_2} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH}_3} \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{$$

Homologous Series

If we examine the formulæ of the various paraffins we find that the formula of each individual differs from that of its "neighbour" by CH₂, e.g., CH_4 , C_2H_6 , C_3H_8 , C_4H_{10} , C_5H_{12} , . . . A set of compounds, such as the paraffins, in which the members differ in composition from one another by CH₂, is known as an homologous series, the individual members being

known as homologues.

Throughout organic chemistry we find homologous series, each series being characterised by the presence of a functional group. The functional group is an atom or a group of atoms that causes a compound to behave in a particular way, i.e., it is the functional group that gives rise to homologous series. Some of the more important functional groups and the classes of compounds to which they give rise are shown in Table I.

It is also possible for a compound to contain two (or more) identical or different functional groups, and this gives rise to polyfunctional compounds

(see text).

If we examine the formulæ of the various paraffins, we find that the formula C_nH_{2n+2} will represent any particular homologue when n is given the appropriate value, e.g., for pentane n is 5; therefore the formula of pentane is C_5H_{12} . The formula C_nH_{2n+2} is known as the general formula of the paraffins. The composition of any homologous series can be expressed by means of a general formula.

When we study the methods of preparation of the different paraffins, we find that several methods are common to all, *i.e.*, similar methods may be used for the preparation of all the homologues. This gives rise to the

general methods of preparation of a particular homologous series.

TABLE I

		Functional Group.			
Class of Compound.		Formula.	Name.*		
Alcohols Aldehydes and ketones	:	>c=0 -OH	Hydroxyl group Carbonyl group		
Carboxylic acids		-c OH	Carboxyl group		
Cyanides		c≡n	Cyano group		
Nitro-compounds .		-NO ₂	Nitro group		
Amines		$-NH_2$	Amino group		
Mercaptans		-SH	Mercapto group		
Sulphonic acids	•	—SO₃H	Sulphonic acid group		

^{*} Many functional groups are known by more than one name. Nomenclature is dealt with in each homologous series described in the text.

Examination of the properties of the paraffins shows that many properties are, more or less, common to all the paraffin homologues. This

gives rise to the general properties of an homologous series.

The occurrence of homologous series facilitates the study of organic chemistry, since it groups together compounds having many resemblances. If we know the properties of several of the lower homologues, we can obtain a fair idea of the properties of higher homologues, i.e., we can forecast (within limits) the properties of a compound that we have not yet prepared. The reader, however, must never be too hasty in predicting the properties of an unknown homologue. The idea of homologous series should be used as a guide, not as a hard-and-fast rule.

In view of what has been said above, we can see that in studying organic chemistry it is advantageous to describe first the general methods of preparation of an homologous series, and then the general properties of that series. It is also usual to describe the more important members individually, and

to indicate, at this stage, any *special* methods of preparation and any *special* properties. This is the way (wherever possible) in which we shall deal with organic chemistry throughout this book, and we shall start by reconsidering the paraffins from this point of view.

The general methods of preparation of the paraffins fall into three groups.

A. From compounds containing the same number of carbon atoms.

1. By the catalytic reduction of unsaturated hydrocarbons, e.g., reduction of ethylene:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow[300^{\circ}]{N_i} C_2H_6 \quad (ex.)^*$$

2. (a) An alcohol, ROH, is converted into its corresponding alkyl iodide using, e.g., phosphorus triodide (see alkyl halides):

$$3ROH + PI_3 \longrightarrow 3RI + H_3PO_3$$
 (v.g.)

The alkyl iodide may then be converted into the paraffin by various means:

(i) Reduction with nascent hydrogen:

$$RI + 2[H] \longrightarrow RH + HI \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

(ii) Catalytic reduction using palladium as catalyst (see p. 65 for the preparation of this catalyst):

$$RI + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pd} RH + HI \quad (v.g.)$$

(iii) Reduction by heating with concentrated hydriodic acid at 150°. This high temperature necessitates heating under pressure, since the maximum boiling point of hydriodic acid (57 per cent. HI) is 126°. High-pressure work is carried out in *autoclaves*, but where the pressure is not excessive, sealed, thick-walled glass tubes may be used. Reductions with hydriodic acid under pressure are carried out in sealed tubes:

$$RI + HI \longrightarrow RH + I_2$$
 (g.-ex.)

The reduction can be performed directly on the alcohol, using excess of hydriodic acid:

ROH + 2HI
$$\xrightarrow{150^{\circ}}$$
 RH + I₂ + H₂O (g.-ex.)

Reduction with concentrated hydriodic acid is usually carried out in the presence of a small amount of red phosphorus which regenerates the hydriodic acid from the iodine formed. The hydriodic acid—red phosphorus mixture is one of the most powerful reducing agents used in organic chemistry.

Instead of reduction, the alkyl iodide may be converted into the corresponding Grignard reagent, which is then decomposed by water to form the paraffin:

$$RI + Mg \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} R - Mg - I \xrightarrow{H_1O} RH \quad (v.g.)$$

(b) By the reduction of a carbonyl compound with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phosphorus, heated under pressure at 150°, e.g., acetone is converted into propane:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HI/P} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (v.g.)$$

^{*} See preface for the significance of these terms in parentheses.

Alternatively, the carbonyl compound can be reduced to the corresponding alcohol, which is then reduced by HI/P (cf. above). On the other hand, ketones may be converted into the corresponding paraffins by the Clemmensen (see p. 150) and Wolff-Kishner (see p. 153) reductions.

(c) By the reduction of fatty acids, $R \cdot CO_2H$, with HI/P in a sealed tube at 200° :

$$R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{HI/P} R \cdot CH_3$$

The yields are very good for the higher paraffins, and may even be improved by heating the fatty acids with hydrogen under pressure in the presence of a nickel catalyst.

B. From compounds containing a larger number of carbon atoms.

r. By heating a mixture of the sodium salt of a fatty acid and soda-lime:

$$R \cdot CO_2Na + NaOH(CaO) \longrightarrow RH + Na_2CO_3$$

This process of eliminating carbon dioxide from a carboxylic acid is known as *decarboxylation*. Soda-lime is a very useful reagent for this process, but various other reagents may also be used.

Oakwood et al. (1950) have shown that only sodium acetate decomposes according to the equation given above. In all of the other cases tested—propionate, butyrate and caproate—various products were obtained, e.g., with sodium propionate:

$$C_2H_5\text{-}CO_2Na \xrightarrow[(44\%)]{\text{NaOH}} C_2H_6 + CH_4 + H_2 + \text{Unsaturated compounds.}$$

This method, therefore, is not suitable for the preparation of simple paraffins since, apart from the low yield of the desired product, it is very difficult to separate the mixtures obtained.

2. By heating a mixture of the disodium salt of a dicarboxylic acid and soda-lime, e.g., sodium adipate gives n-butane:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2Na \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2Na} + 2{\rm NaOH(CaO)} \longrightarrow \\ {\rm CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_3 + 2Na_2CO_3} \end{array}$$

The reader may well ask: why not use tricarboxylic acids, etc.? dealing with a preparation, there are at least three important points that must be considered: (i) the yield of crude product; (ii) the yield of pure product; (iii) the accessibility of the starting materials. In certain cases the yield of crude material is high, but the nature of the impurities is such that purification causes a large loss of material, resulting in a poor yield of pure product. On the other hand, it often happens that the product of one reaction is to be used as the starting material for some other compound which can readily be freed (i.e., purified with very little loss) from the original impurity. Provided, then, that this impurity does not interfere with the second reaction, the crude material of the first step can be used as the starting material for the second. Thus the yield alone of a particular reaction cannot decide the usefulness of that method of preparation; the subsequent history of the product must also be taken into consideration. Furthermore, all things being equal, the more accessible materials, i.e., readily prepared or purchased, are used as the starting materials.

With respect to the decarboxylation of acids as a means of preparing paraffins, the reader will find that tricarboxylic acids, etc., are not readily accessible; in fact, they are less accessible than the paraffins that can be prepared from them. It would, therefore, be useless, from the practical point of view, to use these acids as starting materials for paraffins. From the point of view of learning the subject, however, some useful purpose is served in carrying out "paper reactions" with inaccessible materials, since the reader may then master reactions of practical value.

C. From compounds containing fewer carbon atoms.

1. By the **Wurtz reaction** (1854). An ethereal solution of an alkyl halide (preferably the bromide or iodide) is treated with sodium, e.g.,

$$RX + R'X + 2Na \longrightarrow R - R' + 2NaX$$

As previously pointed out, when we do not wish to specify a particular alkyl radical, we use the symbol R. When we deal with two unspecified alkyl radicals which may, or may not, be the same, we can indicate this by R and R': also, when dealing with compounds containing a halogen atom, and we do not wish to specify the halogen, we can indicate the presence of

the unspecified halogen atom by means of X.

Consideration of the equation given above shows that in addition to the desired paraffin R-R', there will also be present the paraffins R-R and R'-R'. Unsaturated hydrocarbons are also obtained. Obviously, then, the best yield of a paraffin will be obtained when R and R' are the same, *i.e.*, when the paraffin contains an even number of carbon atoms and is symmetrical. It has been found that the Wurtz reaction gives good yields only for "even carbon" paraffins of high molecular weight, and that the reaction generally fails with tertiary alkyl halides (q.v.).

Sodium is used in the Wurtz reaction. Other metals, however, in a finely-divided state, may also be used, e.g., Ag, Cu (see text).

Two mechanisms have been suggested for the Wurtz reaction, and there is evidence in favour of both. It is even possible that both take place simultaneously.

(i) The intermediate formation of an organo-metallic compound, e.g., the formation of n-butane from ethyl bromide:

$$C_2H_5$$
—Br + 2Na· \longrightarrow C_2H_5 Na⁺ + NaBr
 C_2H_5 Na⁺ + C_2H_5 Br \longrightarrow C_2H_5 — C_2H_5 + NaBr

(ii) The intermediate formation of free radicals, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5-Br + Na \longrightarrow C_2H_5 + NaBr$$

$$C_2H_5 + C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_2H_5-C_2H_5$$

One of the properties of free radicals is disproportionation, i.e., intermolecular hydrogenation, one molecule acquiring hydrogen at the expense of the other, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5$$
 + C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + C_2H_4

This would account for the presence of ethane and ethylene in the products. According to Morton *et al.* (1942), however, ethane and ethylene may be produced as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} Na^{+} & \nearrow^{Br} \\ H_{2}C^{-} & \nearrow & CH_{2} & \longrightarrow CH_{3} + CH_{2} + NaBr \\ CH_{3} & H & CH_{2} & CH_{3} & CH_{2} \end{array}$$

This mechanism is particularly interesting in view of the fact that disproportionation is commonly accepted as a criterion for a free-radical mechanism. Furthermore, Bryce-Smith (1956) has obtained evidence that free radicals play only a minor part in the formation of the usual Wurtz coupling and disproportionation products. Also, Le Goff *et al.* (1958) have obtained evidence to show that the Wurtz reaction of sodium with 2-chloro-octane is a bimolecular reaction of an alkylsodium with an alkyl halide.

2. Kolbe's electrolytic method (1849). A concentrated solution of the sodium or potassium salt of a fatty acid or mixture of fatty acids is electro-

lysed, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2K + R' \cdot CO_2K + 2H_2O \longrightarrow R - R' + 2CO_2 + H_2 + 2KOH$$

If R and R' are different, then hydrocarbons R—R and R'—R' are also obtained (cf. Wurtz reaction). Such mixtures can often be separated readily. Yields of 50–90 per cent. have been obtained with straight-chain acids containing 2–18 carbon atoms. Alkyl groups in the α -position decrease the yield (usually below 10 per cent.). The by-products are olefins, alcohols (particularly in alkaline solution), and esters. It is also interesting to note that the yields of the alkanes are increased when dimethylformamide is used as solvent (Finkelstein et al., 1960).

The Kolbe electrolytic method now has application in the synthesis of

natural compounds, particularly lipids.

The mechanism of the reaction is still obscure; a possibility is via free radicals, e.g., when sodium propionate is electrolysed, n-butane, ethane, ethylene and ethyl propionate are obtained. The propionate ion discharges at the anode to form a free radical:

$$C_2H_5CO_2: \longrightarrow C_2H_5CO_2\cdot + e$$

This free propionate radical then breaks up into the free ethyl radical and carbon dioxide:

$$C_2H_5CO_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_5 + CO_2$$

Then:

- (i) $2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_4H_{10}$
- (ii) C_2H_5 + C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + C_2H_4
- (iii) C_2H_5 + $C_2H_5CO_2$ \longrightarrow $C_2H_5CO_2C_2H_5$

Reaction (i) gives n-butane; (ii) gives ethane and ethylene by disproportionation (cf. Wurtz reaction); and (iii) gives ethyl propionate.

3. By the action of an alkyl halide on a Grignard reagent:

$$R-Mg-I + R'I \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} R-R' + MgI_2 \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

4. Frankland's method (1850). Dialkyl-zinc compounds readily react with alkyl halides to form hydrocarbons:

$$R_{2}Zn + R'I \longrightarrow R-R' + R-Zn-I$$

Dialkyl-zinc compounds are difficult to handle and as far as hydrocarbons are concerned, are used only for the preparation of paraffins containing a quaternary carbon atom, e.g.,

$$(CH_3)_3CCl + (CH_3)_2Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_4C + CH_3-Zn-Cl$$

General properties of the paraffins. The name paraffin arose through contracting the two Latin words "parum affinis", which means "little affinity". This name was suggested because these hydrocarbons were apparently very unreactive. It is difficult to define the terms "reactive"

and "unreactive", since a compound may be reactive under one set of conditions and unreactive under another. Under "ordinary" conditions, the paraffins are inert towards reagents such as acids, alkalis, oxidising reagents, reducing reagents, etc. In recent years, however, it has been shown that the paraffins are reactive if the "right" conditions are used (see below).

General physical properties of the paraffins. The normal paraffins from C_1 to C_4 are colourless gases; C_5 to C_{17} , colourless liquids; and from C_{18} onwards, colourless solids. The b.ps. rise fairly regularly as the number of carbon atoms in the compound increases. This holds good only for the normal compounds, and the difference in b.ps. decreases as the higher homologues are reached. Other physical properties, such as m.p., specific gravity, viscosity, also increase in the same way as the b.ps. (of the normal paraffins), e.g., the specific gravity of the normal paraffins increases fairly steadily for the lower members, and eventually tends to a maximum value of about 0.79. Straight-chain paraffins containing at least six carbon atoms form inclusion compounds with urea (see p. 387).

At the moment comparatively little is known about the quantitative relationships between physical properties and chemical constitution. It is believed that variation in b.ps. of compounds is due to different *intermolecular* forces such as hydrogen bonding, dipole moments, etc. Hydrogen bonding may produce association, and this will cause the b.p. to be higher than anticipated (see, e.g., alcohols). The greater the dipole moment of the compound, the higher is the b.p., since, owing to the charges, more work is required to separate the molecules, e.g., nitro-compounds, R·NO₂, which have large dipole moments, have much higher b.ps. than the paraffins in which the dipole moment is absent or very small.

Observation has shown that in a group of isomeric compounds (acyclic), the normal compound *always* has the highest b.p. and m.p., and generally, the greater the branching, the lower the b.p.

The paraffins are almost insoluble in water, but readily soluble in ethanol and ether, the solubility diminishing with increase in molecular weight.

It is believed that solubility depends on the following intermolecular forces: solvent/solute; solute/solute; solvent/solvent. A non-electrolyte dissolves readily in water only if it can form hydrogen bonds with the water. Thus paraffins are insoluble, or almost insoluble, in water. Methane is more soluble than any of its homologues; hydrogen bonding with the water is unlikely, and so other factors—possibly molecular size—must also play a part. A useful rule in organic chemistry with respect to solubility is that "like dissolves like", e.g., if a compound contains a hydroxyl group, then the best solvents usually contain hydroxyl groups. This rule is not rigid (cf. paraffins).

X-Ray analysis of solid paraffins has shown that the carbon chains are fully extended, i.e., zigzag. In the liquid state this extended form is also one of the

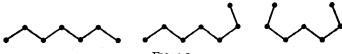


FIG. 3.1.

stable conformations provided that the carbon chain is not very long. When the number of carbon atoms is sixteen or more, the extended form is no longer present in the liquid state. The presence of a number of these different conformations (or rotational isomers) has been shown by a study of infra-red and Raman spectra of liquid paraffins. The various conformations arise from the fact that groups can rotate about single bonds (p. 404). Furthermore, it has been found that not all possible conformations are present, e.g., n-heptane shows the presence of three conformations (Sheppard et al., 1948, 1949). Fig. 1 shows diagrammatically three possible forms.

Since the dipole moment of methane is zero, the dipole moment of the methyl group is equal to that of the fourth C—H bond (in methane) and is directed along this axis. Thus replacement of hydrogen by a methyl group will not be expected to change the dipole moment, i.e., the dipole moment of all paraffins, whether straight- or branched-chain, will be zero. This has been found to be so in practice. This will always hold good whatever conformation is taken up by the paraffin provided that no deformation of the normal carbon valency angle (of 109° 28') is produced in the twisting, since all methyl groups will be balanced by a C—H bond. It therefore follows that the electronegativity of all alkyl groups is equal to that of hydrogen, namely zero (p. 16). As soon as one hydrogen atom is replaced by another atom or group (other than alkyl), the resultant molecule will now be found to possess a dipole moment (see also p. 106).

General Chemical Properties of the Paraffins

I. Halogenation (see also the alkyl halides). Chlorination has been studied in very great detail. It may be brought about by light, heat or catalysts, and the extent of chlorination depends largely on the amount of chlorine used. A mixture of all possible isomeric monochlorides is obtained, but the isomers are formed in unequal amounts, due to the difference of the reactivity of primary, secondary and tertiary hydrogen atoms. Markownikoff (1875) found experimentally that the order of ease of substitution is tertiary hydrogen>secondary>primary. This observation is very useful for predicting the possible courses of a reaction, and qualitatively, to what extent each course will proceed, e.g., chlorination of isobutane at 300° gives a mixture of two isomeric monochlorides:

$$CH_3$$
 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3

We should expect to find more of (II) than (I); quantitative experiments show that this is so.

Bromination is similar to chlorination, but not so vigorous. Iodination is reversible, but it may be carried out in the presence of an oxidising agent, such as HIO₃, HNO₃, HgO, etc., which destroys the hydrogen iodide as it is formed (see p. 40). Iodides are more conveniently prepared by treating the chloro- or bromo-derivative with sodium iodide in methanol or acetone solution, e.g.,

$$RCl + NaI \xrightarrow{acetone} RI + NaCl$$

This reaction is possible because sodium iodide is soluble in methanol or acetone, whereas sodium chloride and sodium bromide are not.

Direct fluorination is usually explosive; special conditions are necessary for the preparation of the fluorine derivatives of the paraffins (see p. 120).

2. Nitration (see also p. 302). Under certain conditions, paraffins react with nitric acid, a hydrogen atom being replaced by a nitro-group, NO₂. This process is known as nitration. Nitration of the paraffins may be carried out in the vapour phase between 150° and 475°, whereupon a complex mixture of mononitroparaffins is obtained. The mixture consists of all the possible mononitro-derivatives and the nitro-compounds formed by every

possibility of *chain fission* of the paraffin; *e.g.*, propane gives a mixture of **1**-nitropropane, 2-nitropropane, nitroethane and nitromethane:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} & \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{-}\text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

As in the case of halogenation, the various hydrogen atoms in propane are

not replaced with equal ease.

3. Sulphonation (see also p. 606) is the process of replacing a hydrogen atom by a sulphonic acid group, SO₃H. Sulphonation of a normal paraffin from hexane onwards may be carried out by treating the paraffin with oleum (fuming sulphuric acid). The ease of replacement of hydrogen atoms is: tertiary very much greater than secondary, and secondary greater than primary; replacement of a primary hydrogen atom in sulphonation is very slow indeed. isoButane, which contains a tertiary hydrogen atom, is readily sulphonated to give tert.-butylsulphonic acid:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + H_2SO_4/SO_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3C \cdot SO_3H + H_2SO_4$$

Sulphuryl chloride, in the presence of light and a catalyst, converts hydrocarbons into sulphonyl chlorides (p. 339).

It has been shown that in concentrated sulphuric acid, hydrocarbons containing a tertiary hydrogen atom undergo hydrogen exchange (Ingold *et al.*, 1936). The mechanism is believed to occur via a carbonium ion:

$$\begin{array}{c} R_3CH + 2H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow R_3C^+ + HSO_4^- + SO_2 + 2H_2O \\ R_3C^+ + R_3CH \longrightarrow R_3CH + R_3C^+, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

This reaction is of particular interest since optically active hydrocarbons have been racemised in sulphuric acid (see p. 412); e.g., Burwell et al. (1948) have shown that optically active 3-methylheptane is racemised in sulphuric acid.

4. Oxidation. All paraffins readily burn in excess of air or oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water. Incomplete oxidation, due to insufficient air, produces carbon-black in variable yields. The mechanism of the oxidation of paraffins in the vapour state appears to take place via the formation of a hydrocarbon peroxide; eg.,

$$\text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 + \text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{O}\text{-}\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{R}\text{-}\text{CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Other products are also obtained by fission of the carbon chain.

Oxidising reagents such as potassium permanganate readily oxidise a tertiary hydrogen atom to a hydroxyl group, e.g., isobutane is oxidised to tert.-butanol:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + [O] \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} (CH_3)_3 \cdot COH$$

The catalytic oxidation of methane produces methanol, CH₃OH, and formaldehyde, H·CHO. The catalytic oxidation of higher homologues (C₁,—) produces long-chain fatty acids and some other products.

(C₁₆—) produces long-chain fatty acids and some other products.

5. Isomerisation of *n*-paraffins into branched-chain paraffins in which the side-chain is a methyl group, may be brought about by heating the *n*-paraffin with aluminium chloride at 300°, *e.g.*, *n*-hexane isomerises into 2- and 3-methylpentanes:

2- and 3-methylpentanes:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} CH_3$$

$$CH_3 \quad CH_3 \quad CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH$$

According to Pines et al. (1946), this isomerisation does not occur unless a trace of water is present (to form HCl from the AlCl₃) together with a trace of alkyl halide or an olefin. The isomerisation is believed to be an ionic chain reaction. The olefin "impurity" is converted into a carbonium ion (by the AlCl₃ and HCl), and this initiates the chain reaction, isomerisation then occurring by 1,2-shift (p. 101).

Instead of writing out the formulæ of the 2- and 3-methylpentanes as shown in the equation, an alternative way is to write the formula in a "straight" line, enclosing in parentheses any side-chain; thus: $CH_3 \cdot CH_1 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot$

In many cases where there is no ambiguity, the parentheses may be omitted, e.g., isopropanol is $CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH_3$; this is often written $CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_3$,

but if the rules are strictly adhered to, it should be written CH₃·CH(OH)·CH₃.

6. The thermal decomposition of the paraffins (see cracking).

PETROLEUM AND NATURAL GAS

Crude petroleum (mineral oil) is the term usually applied to the gases occurring naturally in the oilfields, the liquid from the wells, and the solids which are dissolved in, or have separated from, the liquid. The composition of crude petroleum varies with the locality of occurrence, but all contain paraffins (from about C_1 to C_{40}), cycloparaffins or naphthenes, and aromatic hydrocarbons. The low-boiling fractions of almost all petroleums are composed of paraffins; it is the composition of the higher-boiling fractions which differs according to the source of the petroleum. In addition to hydrocarbons, there are also present compounds containing oxygen, nitrogen, sulphur and metallic constituents.

Natural gas is the term applied to the large quantities of gas associated with or unassociated with liquid petroleum. The composition of natural gas varies with the source, and consists chiefly of the first six paraffins, the percentage of each decreasing with increasing molecular weight. Other gases such as water vapour, hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide and hydrogen sulphide may be present in amounts that vary with the locality of occurrence.

The origin of petroleum and natural gas is still uncertain. Many theories have been suggested, but not one explains all the known facts. There is now, however, general agreement that petroleum has organic origin, and this is due to the fact that the higher boiling fractions of petroleum contain optically active compounds (p. 399) and that petroleum has been shown to contain both animal and plant type of porphyrins, *i.e.*, hæmin and chlorophyll (Treibs, 1934–36). The problem is how organic matter is converted into petroleum. A very highly favoured theory is that it takes place by means of bacterial decomposition, but there is a growing belief that bacterial action is only the first stage in the conversion and this is then followed by physical and chemical stages.

Another highly favoured theory is that petroleum is formed from organic matter by the catalytic activity of certain natural inorganic compounds. There is a great deal of experimental work that supports this theory which, in many ways, appears superior to any other. It is probable that both mechanisms are operating.

Distribution and general composition of crude petroleum. If the residue of petroleum, after removal of volatile compounds, contains a large amount of paraffins or wax, the petroleum is classified as paraffinic or paraffin base oil. If naphthenes predominate, the petroleum is classified as asphaltic or asphalt base oil. The crudes from the wells in Pennsylvania, Iran, Irak and Rumania are paraffinic; those from Baku and Venezuela are asphaltic; and those from Oklahoma, Texas and Mexico are intermediate in composition, and may be classified as paraffinic and asphaltic.

Distillation of petroleum. The crude oil is nearly always associated with water and sand; hence the crude petroleum discharged from the top of the well contains water and sand in suspension. The mixture is passed, under pressure, into

cylindrical tanks, and the gas, oil and solids are drawn off separately.

Except for the low-boiling hydrocarbons, no attempt is made to separate the individual hydrocarbons. The crude oil is fractionated by continuous distillation into four main fractions: petrol (gasoline), kerosene (kerosine, paraffin oil), gas oil (heavy oil) and lubricating oil. The residue may be fractionated by means of vacuum-distillation to give light, medium and heavy lubricating oils, paraffin wax, and asphaltic bitumen. Each of the four main fractions may be further split up by batch distillation into fractions of narrow boiling range. Recently, it has been possible to isolate individuals by "superfractionation". The final number of fractions taken depends on the purpose in view.

Table II shows one set of fractions that may be obtained.

Refining of the various fractions. It appears that refining was originally introduced to remove the bad colour and objectionable odour of petrol. To-day it is realised that it is more important to remove sulphur compounds which lower the response of petrol to added tetraethyl-lead.

An internal-combustion engine, i.e., one which burns fuel within the working cylinder, is more efficient the higher the compression ratio. Petrol engines use "spark ignition", and as the compression ratio increases, a point is reached when "knocking" is observed, i.e., after passage of the firing spark, instead of

Name BP°C App

Name.	B.P. ° C.	Approximate Composition.	Uses.
Light petrol	20-100 70-90 80-120 70-200 200-300 above 300	$\begin{array}{c} C_5H_{13}-C_7H_{16} \\ C_6-C_7 \\ C_6-C_8 \\ C_6-C_{11} \\ C_{12}-C_{16} \\ C_{13}-C_{18} \\ C_{16}-C_{20} \\ C_{18}-C_{22} \\ \end{array}$	Solvent Dry cleaning Solvent Motor fuel Lighting Fuel oil Lubricants Pharmaceutical parations Candles, waxed etc. Asphalt tar; leum coke

all the fuel gas burning smoothly, the end portion burns with explosive violence, giving rise to a metallic rattle. The phenomenon of knocking is still not fully understood, but it has been found that, among other factors, the tendency to knock depends on the nature of the petrol. n-Paraffins tend to produce knocking far more than branched-chain paraffins. Edgar (1927) introduced 2:2:4-trimethylpentane (incorrectly known as iso-octane), which has higher antiknock properties, and n-heptane, which has lower antiknock properties than any commercial petrol, as standards for rating fuels. "iso-Octane" is arbitrarily given the value of 100 and n-heptane, 0, and the octane number of any fuel is the per cent. of "iso-octane" in a mixture of this compound and n-heptane which will knock under the same conditions as the fuel being tested.

Olefins and aromatic compounds have high octane numbers. Tetraethyl-lead also raises the octane number of a given petrol, but if sulphur compounds are

present, the response to this "dope" is lowered. Hence it is very important to remove sulphur compounds from petrol. The method of refining depends on the particular fraction concerned, and it is not practicable to refine before

distillation (of the petroleum).

Gasoline refining. 1. Petroleum may be treated with concentrated sulphuric acid which reduces the sulphur content and also removes unsaturated compounds which polymerise on standing to form gums (see olefins). For straight-run gasoline, i.e., gasoline obtained directly from crude petroleum, 98 per cent. sulphuric acid is used; for cracked gasoline (see later), 80 per cent. acid is used. This diluted acid removes only unstable unsaturated hydrocarbons, i.e., those which tend to polymerise, leaving the stable unsaturated hydrocarbons, which raise the octane number of the gasoline. The diluted acid, however, causes some polymerisation to take place, but the gasoline is readily separated from these high-boiling polymers by distillation.

2. Instead of sulphuric acid the adsorption process can be used to remove thioalcohols (the chief group of sulphur compounds occurring in petroleum) from straight-run gasoline. The gasoline vapour is passed, under pressure, over an adsorbent such as clays, bauxite, etc., heated at about 450° C. Cracked gasoline contains sulphur as thiophens, and these cannot be removed so easily this way. Thiophens, however, are not so objectionable as thioalcohols.

- 3. Straight-run gasolines may be refined by sodium hydroxide washing, which may remove almost all thioalcohol sulphur. Where this simple sodium hydroxide treatment is insufficient, it is followed by "sweetening". By sweetening, the thioalcohols (which give gasoline an unpleasant odour) are converted into disulphides, thereby improving the odour. Common sweetening agents are:
 - (i) An alkaline solution of sodium plumbite ("doctor solution"):

$$2RSH + Na_2PbO_2 + S \longrightarrow R - S - S - R + PbS + 2NaOH$$

Free sulphur is added as required in carefully controlled amounts. The spendoctor solution is regenerated by blowing with air.

(ii) Sodium hypochlorite:

$$2RSH + [O] \xrightarrow{NaOCl} R - S - S - R + H_2O$$

(iii) Cupric chloride:

$$2RSH + 2CuCl_2 \longrightarrow R - S - S - R + 2CuCl + 2HCl$$

Sweetening of "sour" gasoline does not appreciably alter the total sulphur content, and will not improve the octane number or lead susceptibility; in fact sweetened gasoline may have a lower octane number and lead susceptibility than unsweetened; only the odour is improved.

4. The solutiser process involves the use of solvents, and the more common ones are a methanolic solution of sodium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide and sodium butyrate, and potassium hydroxide and potassium butyrate. By this means the thioalcohols are removed completely, and thus the octane number

and lead susceptibility are raised.

Kerosene refining. (i) The kerosene is washed first with sulphuric acid, then with sodium hydroxide solution, and finally with water. (ii) The kerosene is treated with liquid sulphur dioxide, which removes most of the sulphur compounds and aromatic hydrocarbons. Because of the removal of the latter, this method of refining cannot be used for gasoline.

Gas oil and lubricating oil refining is carried out by extraction with liquid

sulphur dioxide.

CRACKING

The thermal decomposition of organic compounds is known as pyrolysis;

pyrolysis, when applied to paraffins, is known as cracking.

When heated to about 500-600°, paraffins are decomposed into smaller molecules, and the products obtained from a given paraffin depend on: (i) the structure of the paraffin; (ii) the pressure under which cracking is

carried out; and (iii) the presence or absence of catalysts such as silica-alumina, silica-alumina-thoria, silica-alumina-zirconia.

The mechanism of cracking is still obscure. Many theories have been suggested, and one that is highly favoured is a free-radical mechanism, evidence for which has been obtained from the observation that at cracking temperatures many hydrocarbons produce free alkyl radicals.

When petroleum is cracked, of all the compounds produced, the most important are those containing up to four carbon atoms: methane, ethane, ethylene, propane, propylene, butane, butylene and *iso*butylene. All of these have found wide application as the materials for the preparation of a

large number of chemicals (see text).

By using suitable catalysts, paraffins containing six or more carbon atoms may be catalytically cyclised, e.g., n-hexane, under pressure, passed over chromic oxide carried on an alumina support and heated at 480–550°, gives benzene (see also p. 500):

$$C_6H_{14} \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + 4H_2$$

There are two main types of cracking: (i) liquid phase, and (ii) vapour

phase.

(i) Liquid phase cracking. Heavy oil (from the petroleum distillation) is cracked by heating at a suitable temperature (475–530°) and under pressure (100–1000 lb/sq. in.), by means of which the cracked material is maintained in the liquid condition. The heavy oil is converted into gasoline to the extent of 60–65 per cent. of the oil (by volume), and has an octane number of 65–70. If attempts are made to increase the yield of gasoline, the octane number decreases.

(ii) In vapour phase cracking the cracking temperature is 600° and the pressure is 50-150 lb/sq. in. The cracking stock may be gasoline, kerosene, gas oils, but not the heavy oils, since these cannot be completely vaporised

under the above conditions.

Reforming is the process whereby straight-run gasoline is cracked in order to raise the octane number. The gasoline is heated to about 600° and under pressure of 400–750 lb/sq. in., and the yield varies from 60 to 90 per cent.; the greater the yield, the lower is the octane number. Catalysts—the oxides of silicon and aluminium, plus small amounts of other oxides such as magnesia, zirconia, etc.—are usually employed in the reforming process, and their use produces a higher octane number (which is partly due to the increased content of benzene and toluene), and also increases the yield of gasoline.

Catalytic cracking is also increasing in use, since it has been found that catalytically cracked gasoline contains few olefins that readily polymerise. Gum formation in cracked gasolines is prevented by the addition of *inhibitors*, which are mainly phenols or aromatic amines, e.g., catechol, p-benzyl-

aminophenol, naphthylamine.

As pointed out above, large quantities of gases up to C_4 (and small amounts of C_5 , *i.e.*, the pentanes and pentenes) are produced in cracking. These gases may be used as the starting materials for various chemicals. Alternatively, by polymerising the olefins under the influence of a catalyst, *e.g.*, phosphoric acid on kieselguhr, or sulphuric acid, a high-octane (80–85) gasoline can be obtained.

Treatment of natural gas. When natural gas does not contain hydrocarbons above ethane, it is said to be "lean" or "dry"; when it contains the higher hydrocarbons (up to hexane) it is said to be "rich" or "wet". The paraffins may be separated by fractional distillation under increased pressure, thereby giving methane, ethane, propane, n- and isobutanes, n-, iso- and neopentanes, and hexane. These gases are used for various purposes (see text). On the other

hand, natural gas itself may be used in the manufacture of various compounds. Oxidation of natural gas under carefully controlled conditions produces a complex mixture of compounds, among which are formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, acetic acid, acetone, methanol, ethanol, propanols and butanols. These are

separated by distillation, solvent extraction, etc.

Wet gas is also used as a source of gasoline. The vapours of the liquid hydrocarbons (pentanes and hexane) in the wet gas are removed by various methods, e.g., compression, and cooling. The liquid product obtained from wet gas is known as "natural" or "casinghead" gas, and is "wild" because of the dissolved gases in it. These gases may be removed by distillation under pressure, and the resulting liquid is known as "stabilised natural gasoline"; this has very high antiknock properties.

Synthetic Fuels. (i) Fischer-Tropsch Gasoline Synthesis or Synthine Process. Synthesis gas, which is water-gas mixed with half its volume of hydrogen, at about 200-300° and a pressure of 1-200 atm., is passed over a catalyst.

 $xCO + yH_2 \longrightarrow mixture of hydrocarbons + water (saturated and unsaturated)$

The water-gas is made from coke. One third of the water-gas is passed with steam at 400° over iron, and the hydrogen-enriched water-gas is then mixed with the rest of the water-gas to produce the synthesis gas. This contains about 20 per cent. of inert gases. If the synthine process is carried out at atmospheric pressure, the carbon dioxide (about one third of the volume of the inert gases) is left in; if the synthesis is carried out under pressure, most of the carbon dioxide is washed out.

Synthesis gas contains sulphur compounds, and since these poison the catalyst, their removal is necessary. Hydrogen sulphide is removed by bog-iron ore. Organic sulphur compounds are oxidised under carefully controlled conditions, the sulphur being retained as sodium sulphate. If the synthesis gas contains large amounts of hydrocarbons, the latter are almost completely removed by passing through active carbon adsorbers before removing the sulphur compounds. The purified gas is then passed to the catalyst chambers, with or without compression. Other methods of preparing synthesis gas are also available, e.g., from methane and steam (p. 41).

Various metals and oxides have been used as catalysts. One of the best is: cobalt (100 parts), thoria (5 parts), magnesia (8 parts) and kieselguhr (200 parts). When synthesis gas is passed over the catalyst at moderate pressure (9-11 atm.), more of the high-boiling fraction is obtained than when the process is carried out at atmospheric pressure. The liquid products are fractionally distilled, and refined in the same way as are the petroleum fractions; furthermore the higher-

boiling fractions are cracked.

Gasoline from the synthine process costs more than that from petroleum. The Fischer-Tropsch oils appear to be more valuable as chemical raw materials than as fuels, and have been used for the production of higher olefins, fatty acids,

detergents and in the oxo-process (see p. 127).

(ii) Petrol from coal. (a) Distillation of coal-tar gives a fuel oil, fractionation of which yields petrol (about one sixth of the volume). On the other hand, hydrogenation of the fuel oil under a pressure of 200 atm. and at about 475° produces petrol in 100 per cent. yield.

(b) In the Bergius process coal dust is heated to 400-500° in hydrogen at 250 atm., preferably in the presence of a catalyst, one of the best being an organic compound of tin. The yield of petrol may be as high as 60 per cent. (on

the coal used).

(c) In the I.C.I. process coal dust is mixed with heavy oil to form a paste (50 per cent. of oil), which is pumped, with hydrogen, under pressure (250 atm.), into chambers containing the catalyst (organic tin compound) heated at 450°. The gases produced are scrubbed and condensed, and the liquid fractions are distilled to give the petrol fraction. The higher-boiling oils may be further hydrogenated to give more petrol.

QUESTIONS

1. Write out the structures and names (by the three methods described in the text) of the isomeric hexanes. State how many primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary carbon atoms there are in each isomer.

2. By means of equations, show how you would convert methane into propane

3. What is the percentage of carbon and hydrogen in the paraffin C₃₀H₆₂? Could you distinguish this paraffin from its next homologue by determining the percentage composition of each hydrocarbon?

4. Synthesise all the alkanes you can, by methods dealt with so far, from (a) CH₂·CH₂·CH(OH)·CH₃; (b) CH₃·CH₂·CH₂·CH₂·CO₂H.

5. Define and give examples of:—(a) isomerism, (b) substitution, (c) homologous series, (d) cracking, (e) nitration, (f) sulphonation, (g) decarboxylation.

6. What reagents could you use to convert:—(a) a monohologen derivative of a reagent and (b) carbonyl compounds into the corresponding and higher paraffine.

paraffin and (b) carbonyl compounds, into the corresponding and higher paraffins?
7. Write notes on:—(a) the Wurtz reaction, (b) Kolbe's electrolytic method, (c) Frankland's method, (d) Fischer-Tropsch reaction.

The reader should test himself on the general methods of preparation and general properties of any homologous series.

READING REFERENCES

Handbook for Chemical Society Authors. Special Publication No. 14. The Chemical

Society (1960).
Rules for I.U.P.A.C. Notation for Organic Compounds, Longmans, Green (1961).

Beezer, Latin and Greek Roots in Chemical Terminology, J. Chem. Educ., 1940, 17, 63. Hurd, The General Philosophy of Organic Nomenclature, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 43. Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.), (i) Vol. I, Ch. 1. Reactions of the Paraffins. (ii) Vol. II, Ch. 23. Constitution and Physical Properties of

Organic Compounds.

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Vol. I (1960). Weedon, The Kolbe Electrolytic Syn-

thesis, p. 1.
Goldstein, The Petroleum Chemicals Industry, Spon (1949).
Brooks, The Chemistry of the Non-benzenoid Hydrocarbons, Reinhold (1950, 2nd ed.).
Astle, The Chemistry of Petrochemicals, Reinhold (1956).

Rossini, Hydrocarbons in Petroleum, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 554.

CHAPTER IV

UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS

Olefins, Alkylenes or Alkenes

The olefins are the unsaturated hydrocarbons that contain one double bond. The simplest member of the series is ethylene, CH_2 — CH_2 ; hence this homologous series is often referred to as the "ethylene series". The olefins have the general formula C_nH_{2n} , and the double bond is also known as the "olefinic bond" or "ethylenic bond".

Olefins have recently become very important technically, since they are obtained in huge quantities in the cracking of petroleum, and may be used

to prepare a large variety of organic compounds (see text).

Nomenclature. The name olefin arose from the fact that ethylene was called "olefiant gas" (oil-forming gas), since it formed oily liquids when treated with chlorine or bromine. The original name given to this homologous series was olefine; but it was later decided to reserve the suffix -ine for basic substances only. Since the name olefine had gained wide usage, it was decided to compromise and call the series the olefins.

One method of nomenclature is to name the olefin from the corresponding paraffin by changing the suffix -ane of the latter into -ylene, e.g., (methylene),

ethylene, propylene, etc.

The name alkylene is obtained in a similar manner, alkane being converted

into alkylene.

Isomers differing only in the position of the double bond are prefixed by Greek letters or numbers which indicate the position of the double bond. The lowest number is usually given to the double bond (see below), and the number (or Greek letter) indicates the *first* of the two carbon atoms that are joined together by the double bond, e.g.,

$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2$	α -Butylene	or	1-Butylene
CH ₃ ·CH=CH·CH ₃	β-Butylene	or	2-Butylene
$(CH_3)_2C = CH_2$	isoButylene		
(CH ₀) ₀ C=CH·CH ₀	β-isoAmylene	(cf. pe	entane and amyl

Another method of nomenclature is to consider ethylene as the parent substance and the higher members as derivatives of ethylene. If the compound is a monosubstituted derivative of ethylene, then no difficulty is encountered in naming it; if the compound is a disubstituted derivative of ethylene isomerism is possible, since the alkyl groups can be attached to the same or different carbon atoms. When the groups are attached to the same carbon atom the olefin is named as the asymmetrical or unsymmetrical compound (abbreviated to as- or unsym-); when attached to different carbon atoms the olefin is named as the symmetrical (sym- or s-) compound, e.g.,

$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2$	Methylethylene
$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3$	s-Dimethylethylene
$(CH_3)_2C = CH_2$	as-Dimethylethylene
$(CH_3)_2C = CH \cdot CH_3$	Trimethylethylene

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the class suffix of the olefins is -ene, and so the series becomes the alkene series. The longest carbon chain containing the double bond is chosen as the parent alkene,

the name of which is obtained by changing the suffix -ane of the corresponding paraffin into -ene. The positions of the double bond and side-chains are indicated by numbers, the lowest number possible being given to the double bond, and this is placed before the suffix, e.g.,

When there are several chains of equal length containing the double bond, then the same principles apply as for the alkanes (p. 47), e.g.,

A double or triple bond is regarded as a functional group. When there are several functional groups in the molecule, then the lowest number possible is given, in order of preference: (i) to the *principal* functional group of the compound; (ii) to the double or triple bond; and (iii) to atoms or groups designated by prefixes.

General Methods of Preparation of the Olefins. 1. By the action of concentrated sulphuric acid, at 160–170°, on primary alcohols. The acid acts as a dehydrating agent, removing one molecule of water from the alcohol to form the olefin, e.g., ethylene from ethanol:

$$C_2H_5OH \xrightarrow{-H_2O} C_2H_4$$
 (f.-g.)

Dehydration of secondary and tertiary alcohols is best carried out using dilute sulphuric acid, since the olefins produced from these alcohols (particularly tertiary alcohols) tend to polymerise under the influence of the concentrated acid. The yields of olefin from secondary and tertiary alcohols are very good.

Instead of sulphuric acid, glacial phosphoric acid (HPO₃), phosphorus pentoxide, or alumina may be used. With alumina, at 350°, the yields are v.g.-ex. Brandenberg et al. (1950) have converted all three classes of alcohols into olefins in excellent yields by means of boric acid as catalyst (borates are formed as intermediates):

$$3R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH + H_3BO_3 \longrightarrow (R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2O)_3B \longrightarrow 3R \cdot CH = CH_2 + H_3BO_3$$

Methyl xanthates may also be used to prepare olefins (p. 131).

2. By the action of *ethanolic* potassium hydroxide on monohalogen derivatives of the paraffins, *e.g.*, propylene from propyl bromide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Br + KOH \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + KBr' + H_2O$$

This is not a very important method for the preparation of the lower alkenes, since these may be prepared directly from the corresponding alcohols, which are readily accessible. The reaction, however, is very important, since by means of it a double bond can be introduced into an organic compound (see text). The yield of olefin depends on the nature of the alkyl halide used; it is fair with primary, and very good for secondary and tertiary alkyl halides. Ethylene cannot be prepared by this method from ethyl halide (see alkyl halides for the mechanism of dehydrohalogenation, i.e., removal of halogen acid).

3. (i) By the action of zinc dust on methanolic solutions of gem-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins, e.g., propylene from propylidene bromide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHBr_2 + Zn \longrightarrow ZnBr_2 + [CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH \subset] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2$$

If sodium is used instead of zinc, and the reaction is carried out preferably in ether solution, comparatively little propylene is formed, the main product being hex-3-ene:

$$_{2}$$
CH₃·CH₂·CHBr₂ + $_{4}$ Na \longrightarrow CH₃·CH₂·CH=CH·CH₂·CH₃ + $_{4}$ NaBr

This reaction is really an extension of the Wurtz synthesis, and the important point to note is that the use of sodium tends to produce lengthening of the carbon chain.

(ii) By the action of zinc dust on methanol solutions of vic-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins, e.g., propylene from propylene bromide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2Br + Zn \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + ZnBr_2$$

Sodium can also be used, but zinc dust is usually more satisfactory.

Neither (i) nor (ii) is used very much for preparing alkenes, since the necessary dihalogen compounds are not readily accessible. The method, however, is very useful for purifying alkenes or for "protecting" a double bond (see, e.g., allyl alcohol). Sodium iodide may be used instead of zinc dust, and its use depends on the fact that the vic-di-iodide which is formed is unstable, and readily eliminates iodine to form a double bond:

$$>$$
CBr·CBr $<$ + 2NaI \longrightarrow 2NaBr + [>CI·CI $<$] \longrightarrow >C=C $<$ + I_2

4. By heating a quaternary ammonium hydroxide, e.g., ethylene from tetraethylammonium hydroxide:

$$(C_2H_5)_4NOH \longrightarrow C_2H_4 + (C_2H_5)_3N + H_2O$$

This method of preparation is more important as a means of ascertaining the structure of a compound containing nitrogen in a ring, and is the basis of the Hofmann Exhaustive Methylation reaction (see p. 318).

5. Boord et al. (1930-33) have prepared olefins by conversion of an aldehyde into its chloro-ether, treating this with bromine followed by a Grignard reagent, and finally treating the product with zinc and n-butanol.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CHO} \xrightarrow{C_4\text{H}_5\text{OH}} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CHCl-OC}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{Br_3} \text{R-CHBr-CHBr-OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \xrightarrow{\text{R'MgBr}} \text{R-CHBr-CHR'-OC}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{Z_n} \text{R-CH-CH-R'} \end{array}$$

This method is very useful for preparing olefins of definite structure, and an interesting point about it is the replacement of the α -chlorine atom by bromine when the α -chloro-ether undergoes bromination in the β -position.

6. The Wittig reaction (1953, 1956). This is also a means of preparing olefins where the position of the double bond is definite. An alkyl (or aralkyl) triphenylphosphonium halide is treated with, e.g., sodium ethoxide and the alkylidene- (or arylidene-) phosphorane produced is then warmed with an aldehyde or ketone (Ph = C_8H_5):

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Ph_3P} + \operatorname{RCH_2Br} \longrightarrow \operatorname{Ph_3PCH_2R}^+ \operatorname{Br}^- \xrightarrow{\operatorname{EtONa}} \\ \operatorname{Ph_3P} = \operatorname{CHR} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{R'_4CO}} \operatorname{R'_2} - \operatorname{C} - \operatorname{CHR} \cdot \operatorname{PPh_3} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{warm}} \\ \operatorname{O}^- \\ \operatorname{R'_9C} = \operatorname{CHR} + \operatorname{Ph_3P} = \operatorname{O} \end{array}$$

7. A number of olefins are prepared by the cracking of petroleum (p. 58), e.g., ethylene, propylene, butylenes, etc. (see also the individuals). For the production of the lower olefins the most suitable starting material is gas oil, whereas for the higher olefins it is best to use paraffin wax or Fischer-Tropsch wax (p. 60). The lower olefins (C_2-C_5) are also prepared by the catalytic dehydrogenation of saturated hydrocarbons, the most satisfactory catalysts being those of the chromium oxide-alumina type.

General properties of the olefins. The members containing two to four carbon atoms are gases; five to fifteen, liquids; sixteen onwards, solids at room temperature. All are lighter than water, in which they are insoluble,

and they burn in air with a luminous smoky flame.

Owing to the presence of a double bond, the olefins undergo a large number of addition reactions, but under special conditions they also undergo substitution reactions. The high reactivity of the olefinic bond is due to the presence of the two π -electrons. These are less firmly held between the two nuclei than the σ -electrons, and are more exposed to external influences, and so are readily polarisable. It is the π -electrons which undergo the electromeric effect at the requirements of the attacking reagent, and when addition occurs, the trigonal arrangement in the olefin changes to the tetrahedral arrangement in the saturated compound produced (see p. 429).

1. Olefins are readily hydrogenated under pressure in the presence of a catalyst. Finely divided platinum and palladium are effective at room temperature; nickel on a support (Sabatier-Senderens reduction) requires a temperature between 200° and 300°; Raney nickel is effective at room

temperature and atmospheric pressure:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow{catalyst} C_2H_6$$

Platinum and palladium-black, i.e., the metals in a very finely divided state, may be prepared by reducing their soluble salts with formaldehyde. Adams' platinum-platinum oxide catalyst is prepared by reducing platinum oxide with hydrogen before the addition of the compound being hydrogenated, or it may be added to the compound, reduction of the oxide taking place during hydrogenation.

One molecule of hydrogen is absorbed for each double bond present in

the unsaturated compound.

The olefinic bond is readily reduced catalytically, but it is not reduced by metals and acid, or sodium and ethanol, unless the double bond is in the $\alpha\beta$ -position with respect to certain groups (see text).

The mechanism of catalytic hydrogenation is not yet fully understood. It appears that adsorption occurs to give metal-carbon and metal-hydrogen bonds. In this way the catalyst lowers the energy of activation.

2. Olefins form addition compounds with chlorine or bromine, e.g., ethylene adds bromine to form ethylene bromide:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_2Br \cdot CH_2Br \quad (85\%)$$

Addition of halogen to olefins can take place by two types of mechanism, polar or free-radical.

Polar mechanism. Evidence for this mechanism is as follows. Stewart et al. (1923) showed that the reaction between ethylene and bromine (in the absence of light) occurs only at the surface of the reaction vessel. Norrish (1923) showed that a polar surface was necessary. When the walls of the container were coated with paraffin wax (a non-polar substance), the rate of reaction between ethylene and bromine was very much reduced, whereas when the walls were coated with stearic acid (a polar substance), the reaction rate was very much increased. Norrish et al. (1926), examining the addition of chlorine to ethylene, showed that a small amount of water vapour catalyses the reaction when the

walls of the container were "bare", but had no effect when the walls had been previously coated with parafin wax. Water vapour can be adsorbed on bare glass but not on wax-coated glass. All these experiments lead to the conclusion that reaction occurs at the *surface* and takes place by a polar mechanism. That a polar mechanism is operating is supported by the fact that the reaction is also catalysed by inorganic halides such as aluminium chloride, etc. The addition of halogen to olefins may also be carried out in a suitable solvent, *e.g.*, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride.

The next problem to be considered is whether in this addition reaction the halogen behaves as an electrophilic or a nucleophilic reagent. All the evidence has shown that reaction takes place in two stages, with the halogen behaving as an electrophilic reagent, e.g., Francis (1925) showed that when ethylene reacts with bromine in aqueous sodium chloride solution, the products are ethylene dibromide and I-bromo-2-chloroethane; no ethylene dichloride is obtained. These results are readily explained by the following mechanism:

$$CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_2} Br \xrightarrow{\delta +} Br \Longrightarrow \overset{\delta +}{CH_2} \xrightarrow{\cdots} CH_2 \xrightarrow{\cdots} Br \xrightarrow{\delta -} \overset{\delta -}{CH_2} \xrightarrow{-} CH_2 - CH_2Br + Br \xrightarrow{-} T.S.$$

The bromine atom that adds on shares a pair of electrons from the ethylene molecule, and in doing so releases its own bonding pair to the other bromine atom (of the bromine molecule), the latter thus being released as a bromide ion. Since the bromine atom that adds on first gains a share in the two electrons retained by the ethylene molecule, bromine is thus an electrophilic reagent. The carbonium ion produced can now combine with any negative ion, and so, since both bromide and chloride ions are available, both of these can add on to give the final products:

$$Br \xrightarrow{\uparrow} CH_2 - CH_2Br \Longrightarrow Br \xrightarrow{\delta-} CH_2 - CH_2Br \longrightarrow CH_2Br - CH_2Br$$
T.S.

In the same way, the Cl- adds on to give CH₂Cl·CH₂Br.

It has been shown, however, that the above mechanism for addition of halogen to olefins satisfies many reactions but not others (Robertson et al., 1937-).

The addition of halogen to a double bond is trans; this stereochemical aspect is discussed on p. 428.

An interesting point about the above mechanism is why, with a symmetrical olefin such as ethylene, the addition is not nucleophilic, *i.e.*,

$$\overrightarrow{\text{Br-Br}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 \text{Br-CH}_2 + \text{Br+}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 \text{Br-CH}_2 \text{Br}}$$

Several reasons have been proposed to explain electrophilic attack, e.g., negative ions (nucleophilic reagents) are hindered from attacking ethylenic carbon atoms by the screen of π -electrons. In fact, π -electrons are very susceptible to attack by electrophilic reagents. Thus olefins are themselves nucleophilic reagents; e.g., many olefins form addition complexes with the silver ion as, e.g., perchlorate. These addition compounds are known as π -complexes (p. 70).

$$(CH_3)_2C = C(CH_3)_2 + Ag^+ \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C = C(CH_3)_2$$

$$Ag^+$$

$$Ag^+$$

$$ClO_4$$

Free-radical mechanism. Under suitable conditions, halogens may add to olefins by a free-radical mechanism, e.g., Stewart et al. (1935) have shown that the addition of chlorine to ethylene is accelerated by light. This suggests a free-radical mechanism.

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{hv} {}_2\operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 = \operatorname{CH}_2 + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot + \operatorname{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 = \operatorname{CH}_2 + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot , \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

It may be asked why the free radical CH₂Cl·CH₂· does not combine with the other chlorine atom (free radical). There is, of course, always a chance of this occurring, but since the concentration of the chlorine molecules is infinitely greater, the reaction will therefore proceed as shown above. On the other hand, since the concentration of the ethylene is high, it would appear that the free radical CH₂Cl·CH₂· could react with ethylene molecules. If this were to happen, polymerisation (or at least dimerisation) would take place. There appears to be no evidence for this, and so, if the reaction is via free radicals, we must suppose it to take place as shown. This type of reaction is known as a free-radical chain reaction, and once started, carries on until the reactants are used up, or the chain broken by the destruction of the free radicals (see below, polymerisation).

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 + HCl$$

Above a certain temperature range, substitution takes place; below this range, addition takes place. The temperature range varies according to the olefin used, but for most olefins lies between 300° and 600°.

On the other hand, substitution is fairly easy with branched-chain olefins,

and again occurs in the allyl position (see, e.g., isobutene).

The action of fluorine on olefins usually results in the formation of carbon tetrafluoride, but addition to the double bond may be effected by treating the olefin with hydrogen fluoride in the presence of lead dioxide (Henne *et al.*, 1945); the fluorinating agent is lead tetrafluoride:

$$\begin{array}{c} PbO_2 + 4HF \longrightarrow PbF_4 + 2H_2O \\ \searrow C = C \swarrow + PbF_4 \longrightarrow \searrow CF \cdot CF \swarrow + PbF_2 \end{array}$$

3. Olefins form addition compounds with the halogen acids, e.g., ethylene adds hydrogen bromide to form ethyl bromide:

$$C_2H_4 + HBr {\:\longrightarrow\:} C_2H_5Br$$

The order of reactivity of the addition of the halogen acids is hydrogen iodide>hydrogen bromide>hydrogen chloride>hydrogen fluoride. The conditions for the addition are similar to those for the halogens; the addition of hydrogen fluoride, however, is effected only under pressure.

In the case of unsymmetrical olefins it is possible for the addition of the halogen acid to take place in two different ways, e.g., propylene might add

on hydrogen iodide to form propyl iodide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + HI \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 I$$

or it might form isopropyl iodide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_3 + HI \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHI \cdot CH_3$$

Markownikoff studied many reactions of this kind, and as a result of his work, formulated the following rule: the negative part of the addendum adds on to the carbon atom that is joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms.

In the case of the halogen acids the halogen atom is the negative part, and so isopropyl halide is obtained.

Markownikoff's rule is empirical, but may be explained theoretically on the basis that the addition occurs by a polar mechanism. As with halogens, the addition of halogen acid is an electrophilic reaction, the proton adding first, followed by the halide ion. That the polar mechanism operates is supported by much experimental work. One piece of evidence that may be cited is that Hennion et al. (1939, 1941) have shown that the addition of hydrogen chloride or bromide to, e.g., cyclohexene, is faster in hydrocarbon solvents such as heptane than in nucleophilic solvents such as ether. These rate differences may be explained by the fact that ether but not heptane can form oxonium ions with protons and thereby greatly reduce the proton concentration:

$$(C_2H_5)_2O + HCl \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2OH^+\}Cl^-$$

This also indicates that the addition of the proton is the rate-determining step. Thus:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_2} H - Cl \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \dot{C}H_2 \cdot CH_3 + Cl \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} CH_2 Cl \cdot CH_3$$

Now consider the case of propylene. Since the methyl group has a +1 effect, the electromeric effect will be *away* from the methyl group. Thus the proton adds on to the carbon *farthest* from the methyl group, and the halide ion then adds to the carbonium ion:

$$CH_3 \longrightarrow CH \stackrel{\frown}{=} CH_2 \stackrel{\frown}{=} CH_3 \stackrel{\dagger}{\cdot} CH \stackrel{\bullet}{\cdot} CH_3 + I^- \longrightarrow CH_3 \stackrel{\bullet}{\cdot} CHI \stackrel{\bullet}{\cdot} CH_3$$

The Peroxide Effect (Kharasch, 1933). The presence of oxygen or peroxides that are formed when the olefin stands exposed to the air, or added peroxides such as benzoyl peroxide, causes the addition of hydrogen bromide to take place in the direction opposite to that predicted by Markownikoff's rule. This departure from the rule is known as the "abnormal" reaction, and was shown to be due to the "peroxide effect" (Kharasch et al., 1933). Hydrogen chloride, hydrogen iodide and hydrogen fluoride do not exhibit the abnormal reaction. The abnormal reaction in the presence of peroxides can be prevented by the addition of an "inhibitor" such as diphenylamine, catechol, etc. It has been found that the addition of hydrogen bromide is "abnormally" effected photochemically as well as by peroxide catalysts (Vaughan, et al., 1942).

The mechanism of the peroxide effect is believed to be a free-radical chain

The mechanism of the peroxide effect is believed to be a free-radical chain reaction, the peroxide generating the free radical R· (cf. polymerisation, below):

$$\begin{array}{c} (R \cdot CO_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2RCO_2 \cdot \longrightarrow 2R \cdot + 2CO_2 \\ R \cdot + HBr \longrightarrow RH + Br \cdot \\ R' \cdot CH = CH_2 + Br \cdot \longrightarrow R' \cdot CH \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{HBr} R' \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Br + Br \cdot , \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

In the photochemical addition, the bromine atom is produced by a quantum of light:

$$HBr \xrightarrow{hv} H \cdot + Br \cdot$$

At least two explanations may be offered for the fact that the bromine atom attacks the carbon atom not joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms:

(i) Free halogen atoms are *electrophilic* reagents owing to their tendency to complete their octets, and hence will attack the olefin at its point of highest electron density. As we have seen above, the electromeric effect in olefins

of the type R·CH=CH₂ takes place away from the CH group, owing to the electron-repelling effect of the R group, i.e., we have:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}=\overset{-}{\text{C}}\text{H}_{2}\longrightarrow\text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}-\overset{-}{\text{C}}\text{H}_{2}\\ \text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}=\overset{-}{\text{C}}\text{H}_{2}+\text{Br}\cdot\longrightarrow\text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}-\text{CH}_{2}\text{Br}\xrightarrow{\text{HBr}}\text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\text{Br}+\text{Br}\cdot,\text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

(ii) Each of two carbon atoms joined by the double bond retains its π -electron. Thus a bromine atom can attack either carbon atom equally well, but of the two free radicals that can be produced, viz., $R \cdot CH \cdot CH_2Br$ and $R \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot$, it is the former which has the lower free energy, and hence this one is more likely to be formed.

Another problem is why only hydrogen bromide exhibits the peroxide effect. The answer is possibly as follows. In HX, the bond strength order is HCl>HBr>HI. Thus the H—Cl bond is too strong to be broken (homolytically). On the other hand, since the H—I bond is weaker than that of H—Br, one might have expected HI to also exhibit the peroxide effect. The reason that it does not is believed to be due to the fact that although HI is split into hydrogen and iodine atoms, iodine atoms are not reactive enough to add on to a double bond, but combine with each other to form iodine molecules, thereby continuously breaking the chain reaction.

Tri- and tetra-halogenated methanes also add on to a *terminal* double bond in the presence of peroxides (Kharasch *et al.*, 1945—). Here again the mechanism is believed to be a free-radical chain reaction, *e.g.*,

$$\begin{split} &(\text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CO}_{2})_{2} \longrightarrow 2\text{R}^{\bullet} + 2\text{CO}_{2} \\ &\text{R}^{\bullet} + \text{CHCl}_{3} \longrightarrow \text{RH} + {}^{\bullet}\text{CCl}_{3} \\ &\text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_{2} + {}^{\bullet}\text{CCl}_{3} \longrightarrow \text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CH}^{\bullet}\text{CH}_{2}{}^{\bullet}\text{CCl}_{3} \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{CHCl}_{3}} \times \text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CH}_{2}{}^{\bullet}\text{CH}_{2}{}^{\bullet}\text{CCl}_{3} + {}^{\bullet}\text{CCl}_{3}; \text{ etc.} \end{split}$$

4. Hypohalous acids add on to olefins to form halohydrins. Usually the reaction is carried out by treating the olefin with chlorine- or bromine-water.

The mechanism is believed to be (cf. p. 66):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \!\!\!=\!\!\! \text{CH}_2 + \text{Br}_2 & \Longrightarrow \text{Br}^- + \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}^* \!\!\! \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_1 \text{O}} \\ \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}^* \!\!\! \text{CH}_2 \text{OH}_2 & \longrightarrow \text{H}^+ + \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}^* \!\!\! \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \end{array}$$

With unsymmetrical olefins, the hydroxyl group adds on to the carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms:

$$R \cdot CH = CH_2$$
 $CI \xrightarrow{} CI \xrightarrow{} CI \xrightarrow{} + R \cdot CH_2 CI \xrightarrow{} H_1O \xrightarrow{} R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 CI$

Aqueous solutions of hypohalous acid also add on to olefins in the presence of strong acids to form halohydrins, e.g., the addition of hypochlorous acid to ethylene. The mechanism is probably via the formation of the chlorinium ion:

CIOH + H⁺
$$\rightleftharpoons$$
 CIOH₂ \rightleftharpoons CI+ + H₂O

CH₂=CH₂ + CI⁺ \Longrightarrow CH₂CI·CH₂OH

CH₂CI·CH₂OH₂+ \rightleftharpoons CH₂CI·CH₂OH

Various sulphenyl halides form adducts with olefins; 2:4-dinitrobenzenesulphenyl chloride in particular has been found extremely useful for identifying olefins (Kharasch et al., 1949—). The mechanism of the addition is possibly as follows, the sulphur being the positive end of the dipole:

$$CH_{2} \xrightarrow{C} CH_{2} + NO_{2} \xrightarrow{\delta + \delta -} CI \xrightarrow{S} CICH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot S \xrightarrow{NO_{2}} NO_{2}$$

Two products are obtained with unsymmetrical olefins, the predominating adduct being the one formed in accordance with Markownikoff's rule.

Compounds containing triple bonds also form adducts with one molecule

of the sulphenyl chloride.

5. Olefins are absorbed by concentrated sulphuric acid to form alkyl hydrogen sulphates. Addition takes place according to Markownikoff's rule, e.g., propylene reacts with sulphuric acid to form isopropyl hydrogen sulphate:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 \quad H = O \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow$$

$$CH_3 \cdot \dot{C}H \cdot CH_3 + O \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2 CHO \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH$$

Paraffins are not absorbed by cold concentrated sulphuric acid, and hence may be separated from olefins (see also ethers and alcohols).

6. Hydration of olefins. Olefins may be hydrated to alcohols by absorption in concentrated sulphuric acid followed by hydrolysis of the alkyl sulphate (see above section and p. 134). Olefins, however, may also be catalytically hydrated in dilute acid solution, e.g., Lucas et al. (1934) showed that isobutylene forms t-butanol in dilute acid solution:

$$(CH_3)_2C=CH_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{H}} (CH_3)_3COH$$

The mechanism of olefin hydration has been the subject of much discussion. The hydration reaction, as such, cannot be examined kinetically, but since the reaction is reversible, the principle of microscopic reversibility may be applied (p. 32). Hughes and Ingold (1941) have examined the elimination of water from t-alcohols, and on the basis of their results have proposed the following mechanism for hydration:

Me₂C
$$\stackrel{\text{Slow}}{=}$$
 $\stackrel{\text{H}}{=}$ $\stackrel{\text{H}$

Thus the first step (which is the rate determining step) is protonation to form a carbonium ion. Taft et al. (1952–1954), however, have obtained evidence that the classical carbonium ion (shown in the equation) is not formed first. According to these authors, a π -complex is formed first, and this is then converted into the classical carbonium ion. In the π -complex the proton is not directly bound to either carbon atom; the π -orbital overlaps the vacant hydrogen orbital.

$$\overset{\text{Me}_2C}{\underset{CH_2}{\parallel}} + H_3O^+ \Longrightarrow H_2O + \ \ \overset{\text{Me}_2C}{\underset{CH_2}{\parallel}} + H^+ \longrightarrow \ \ \overset{\text{Me}_2C^+}{\underset{CH_3}{\parallel}}$$

The problem, however, cannot be regarded as settled.

7. Olefins add on nitrosyl chloride, nitrosyl bromide and oxides of nitrogen; e.g., ethylene forms ethylene nitrosochloride with nitrosyl chloride:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + NOCl \longrightarrow CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot NO$$

Since the X atom is the negative end of the dipole in NOX, it will add on to the carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms (Mar-

kownikoff's rule), e.g., trimethylethylene adds on nitrosyl bromide to form the following trimethylethylene nitrosobromide:

$$(CH_3)_2C$$
 $CH_3 + NO$ $CH_3 - (CH_3)_2CBr \cdot CH(NO) \cdot CH_3$

The reaction with nitrosyl chloride is usually carried out by treating a solution of the olefin and ethyl or pentyl (amyl) nitrite in glacial acetic acid with concentrated hydrochloric acid, the temperature being maintained at about 10°. The nitrosochlorides (and nitrosobromides) are usually bimolecular crystalline solids, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2} \\ \parallel + \operatorname{NOCl} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \operatorname{CH_2-NO} \\ \mid \\ \operatorname{CH_2-Cl} \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{2 molecules}} \begin{bmatrix} \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot NO} \\ \mid \\ \operatorname{CH_2 Cl} \end{bmatrix}_2$$

The addition of the oxides of nitrogen to olefins is complicated, and much of the work done is of a doubtful nature. The compound formed depends on the structure of the olefin and the nature of the "nitrous fumes"; usually a mixture of addition products is formed. According to Levy, Scaife et al. (1946), when ethylene, propylene, and some other olefins react with dinitrogen tetroxide, $\rm N_2O_4$, then according to the conditions dinitroparaffin, nitro-alcohols and nitro-alkyl nitrates can be obtained in high yield. The reaction is best carried out in the liquid phase at -10° to $+25^{\circ}$. Dinitro-compounds or nitro-nitrites are produced, but the latter are usually partly oxidised to nitro-nitrate. The unchanged nitro-nitrite is unstable, tending to explode, but it may be converted into the stable nitro-alcohol when treated in the cold with water or a lower aliphatic alcohol. The nitrogen tetroxide behaves as (i) two $\rm NO_2$ groups to give dinitro-compounds, and (ii) one $\rm NO_2$ group and one ONO group (nitrite radical) to give nitro-nitrites (see also nitro-compounds):

According to Schechter et al. (1953), the addition of dinitrogen tetroxide occurs via the formation of the nitronium free-radical:

$$\begin{array}{c} O_2N-NO_2 \Longrightarrow 2\cdot NO_2 \\ > C - C < \xrightarrow{\cdot NO_2} > C - C < + > C - C < \\ NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 & ONO \end{array}$$

Dinitrogen trioxide in ether adds on to olefins at -70 to 5° to give mainly dimeric nitro-nitroso compounds:

If the olefin is unsymmetrical, then the nitro group adds to the carbon joined to the larger number of hydrogen atoms. This may be explained by assuming that the nitro group is the positive part of the addendum (i.e., the addition takes place according to Markownikoff's rule):

$$CH_{3} \cdot CH = CH_{2} \quad O_{2}N - NO \longrightarrow CH_{3} \cdot \dot{C}H \cdot CH_{2} \cdot NO_{2} + \dot{N}O \longrightarrow CH_{3} \cdot CH(NO) \cdot CH_{2} \cdot NO_{2}$$

Acetyl nitrate (70 per cent. nitric acid and excess of acetic anhydride) reacts with many alkenes to give a mixture of β -nitro-acetate, β -nitro compound and β -nitro-nitrate (Bordwell *et al.*, 1960), *e.g.* (Ac = CH₃·CO):

- 8. Olefins are readily hydroxylated, *i.e.*, add on hydroxyl groups, to form dihydroxy-compounds known as glycols (q.v.). Hydroxylation may be effected:
 - (i) By cold dilute alkaline permanganate solution (cis-hydroxylation); e.g., ethylene is converted into ethylene glycol:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + H_2O + [O] \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH$$

The mechanism of hydroxylation with permanganate is believed to proceed via a cyclic intermediate (cf. osmium tetroxide, below).

$$\begin{array}{c} HC \\ HC \\ HC \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow[]{KMnO_4} \begin{array}{c} H-C-O \\ H-C-OH \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow[]{O} \begin{array}{c} hydrolysis \\ H-C-OH \\ \end{array}$$

This mechanism accounts for cis-hydroxylation and is supported by the work of Wiberg et al. (1957), who used potassium permanganate labelled with ¹⁸O and showed that both glycol oxygen atoms come from the oxidising agent.

(ii) By 90 per cent. hydrogen peroxide in glacial acetic acid or better, in formic acid; e.g., oleic acid is converted into 9: 10-dihydroxystearic acid (see also reaction 9):

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_{7}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CH} \!\!=\!\! \mathrm{CH}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_{7}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} + \mathrm{H_2O_2} \!\!\longrightarrow\!\! \\ \mathrm{CH_3}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_{7}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{OH})\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{OH})\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_{7}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} \end{array}$$

The addition of hydrogen peroxide may be catalysed by various oxides, e.g., osmium tetroxide in *tert*.-butanol (*cis*-addition), selenium dioxide in *tert*.-butanol or acetone (*trans*-addition; see p. 429).

(iii) By means of osmium tetroxide. This compound adds very readily to an ethylenic double bond at room temperature (Criegee, 1936):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
R \cdot CH & R \cdot CH - O \\
\parallel & + OsO_4 \longrightarrow R \cdot CH - O
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R \cdot CH - O \\
R \cdot CH - O
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
Os \\
Os
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
(v.g. - ex.)$$

These cyclic compounds (osmic esters), on refluxing with aqueous ethanolic sodium hydrogen sulphite, are hydrolysed to 1:2-glycols (cis-glycols).

If the addition of osmium tetroxide is carried out in the presence of pyridine, coloured crystalline compounds are obtained, usually in theoretical yield:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{R-CH} \\ \parallel \\ \text{R-CH} \end{array} + \text{OsO}_4 + 2\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{R-CH-O} \\ \mid \\ \text{R-CH-O} \end{array} \\ \text{OsO}_2, \ 2\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N} \end{array}$$

Berkowitz et al. (1958) have shown that ruthenium tetroxide is more convenient to use than osmium tetroxide; it is less toxic.

cis-Hydroxylation of a double bond may also be effected by treating the olefin with iodine and silver acetate in wet acetic acid, and then hydrolysing the mixed mono- and di-acetates with alkali (Barkley et al., 1954):

$$> C = C < \xrightarrow{I_3} > C - C < + > C - C < \xrightarrow{NaOH} > C - C < OH O+CO+CH_3 CH_3+COO O+CO+CH_3 OH OH$$

Glycols are readily oxidised to acids or ketones by means of acid permanganate or acid dichromate, the nature of the products being determined by the structure of the glycol, e.g.,

(a) propylene glycol gives acetic and formic acid:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CH}(\text{OH})\text{-CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{CH}_3\text{-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{H}$$

(b) isoButylene glycol gives acetone and formic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_{3} \\
\text{CH}_{3}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{COH}_{2}\text{OH} \xrightarrow{[O]} \xrightarrow{[O]} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_{3}} \\
\text{CH}_{3}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CO} + \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_{2}\text{H} + \text{H}_{2}\text{O}$$

Sodium bismuthate, in acid solution, also effects similar oxidations (Rigby, 1950). An advantage of this reagent is that an aldehyde is one of

(Rigby, 1950). An advantage of this reagent is that an aidenyde is one of the products (when possible); it is *not* further oxidised.

Oxidation of a glycol may also be effected by lead tetra-acetate, (CH₃·CO₂)₄Pb, or by periodic acid, HIO₄ or H₅IO₆, the products being aldehydes or ketones, according to the structure of the glycol, *e.g.*,

(a) ethylene glycol gives two molecules of formaldehyde:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} H \cdot CHO + H \cdot CHO$$

(b) isoButylene glycol gives acetone and formaldehyde:

$$CH_3$$
 $COH) \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_3$ $CO + H \cdot CHO$

It can be seen that whatever oxidising agent is used the glycol is split into two fragments, the rupture of the carbon chain occurring between the two carbon atoms joined to the hydroxyl groups. Since these two carbon atoms were linked together by the double bond in the original olefin, identification of the two fragments which may be acids, aldehydes or ketones, will indicate the position of the double bond in the olefin, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CH = CH \cdot R' \xrightarrow{H_1O_1} R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot R' \xrightarrow{HIO_1} R \cdot CHO + R' \cdot CHO$$

9. **Prileschaiev's reaction** (1912). By means of per-acids, the double bond in olefins is converted into the *epoxide* (olefin oxide). Perbenzoic acid, C_6H_6 -CO- O_2H , and monoperphthalic acid, CO_2H - C_6H_4 -CO- O_2H , have been widely used for this reaction, *e.g.*,

$$R \cdot CH = CH \cdot R' + C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot O_2Na \longrightarrow R \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot R' + C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2Na$$

Emmons et al. (1954, 1955) have found that peroxytrifluoroacetic acid $(CF_3 \cdot CO \cdot O_2H)$ is a very good reagent for epoxidation and hydroxylation.

$$R \cdot CH = CH \cdot R \xrightarrow{CF_3 \cdot CO_3H} R \cdot CH - CH \cdot R \xrightarrow{CF_3 \cdot CO_3H} R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CF_3) \cdot R \xrightarrow{HCl \text{ in}} R \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot R \quad (60-95\%)$$

This method is particularly useful for high molecular-weight alkenes with a terminal double bond (these are only slowly hydroxylated by other peracids). Furthermore, peroxytrifluoroacetic acid may be used to hydroxylate negatively substituted olefins, e.g., ethyl acrylate, CH₂=CH·CO₂C₂H₅.

Epoxides are readily converted into glycols (p. 248).

Many mechanisms have been proposed for epoxidation, but none is certain.

According to Pausacker *et al.* (1955), the mechanism is

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
CH \\
CH$$

$$CH$$

10. Olefins add on ozone to form **ozonides.** These are usually explosive in the free state, and their structure and mechanism of formation have been the subject of a great deal of work. Staudinger (1922) suggested that the *molozonide* is formed first, and this then rearranges to the ozonide, some polymerising as well.

Criegee (1959) has isolated the molozonide of trans-di-t-butylethylene at -80° (R = R' = (CH₃)₃C—); reduction of this compound gives the glycol, thereby showing that one of the C—C bonds is still intact. When the temperature was allowed to rise to -60° , the molozonide rearranged to the ozonide.

According to Criegee et al. (1954), the formation of the ozonide takes place as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} > c = 0 + & \downarrow c \\ & Q = 0 \\ & \downarrow c \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{Q = 0} c \\ > c = c \\ + O^3 \xrightarrow{Q} \begin{bmatrix} > c \\ & Q^2 \\ & Q \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{Q} c \\ > c$$

Bailey (1957), however, has proposed a mechanism in which the first step is the formation of a π -complex. This then produces a zwitterion which breaks down to produce the zwitterion and carbonyl compound in the Criegee mechanism:

In this way Bailey explains the ready fission of carbon-carbon multiple bonds.

The ozonide is prepared by dissolving the olefinic compound in a solvent that is unaffected by ozone, e.g., chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, glacial acetic acid, light petrol, etc., and a stream of ozonised oxygen is passed through. Subsequent treatment may be by one of the following procedures.

through. Subsequent treatment may be by one of the following procedures.

(i) The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residual ozonide is treated with water and zinc dust in the presence of traces of silver and hydroquinone (Whitmore, 1932). Aldehydes or ketones are obtained according to the structure of the olefin. The function of the zinc dust is to destroy the hydrogen peroxide which is formed in the reaction, and which tends to oxidise the aldehyde (if this is a primary cleavage product) to the corresponding acid, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} R_2C - O - CH \cdot R' & \xrightarrow{H_4O} R_2CO + R' \cdot CHO + H_2O_2 \\ O - O & & R' \cdot CHO + H_2O_2 \longrightarrow R' \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \end{array}$$

In practice both aldehyde and acid are obtained.

(ii) A better method than the above is the *reductive* decomposition of the ozonide (Fischer, 1928, 1932). A palladium catalyst carried on a calcium carbonate support is added to the solution of the ozonide and then hydrogen is passed in. Usually a good yield (50–90 per cent.) of aldehyde or ketone is obtained:

(iii) Wilms (1950) has found that peracetic acid in acetic acid oxidises

ozonides to carboxylic acids in high yields.

The resulting aldehydes (or acids) and ketones are identified, and thus the position of the double bond in the olefinic compound is found. The complete process of preparing the ozonide and decomposing it (and identifying the products formed) is known as ozonolysis, and this is probably the best method for determining the position of a double bond in any olefinic compound. Recently, however, some doubt has been cast on ozonolysis as a means of determining the positions of double bonds in unsaturated compounds, e.g., according to Barnard et al. (1950), during the ozonolysis of citral (an acyclic terpene), partial rearrangement from the isopropylidene (I) to the isopropenyl structure (II) occurs (this is an example of a three-carbon tautomeric system; see p. 220):

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} \operatorname{CH_3} & \operatorname{CH_3} & \operatorname{CH_3} & \operatorname{CH_3} \\ | & | & | & | & | \\ \operatorname{CH_3 \cdot C} = \operatorname{CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot$$

Ozonides may be reduced to alcohols directly by sodium borohydride (inter alia, Sousa et al., 1960).

II. Olefins isomerise when heated at high temperature (500-700°), or at a lower temperature (200-300°) in the presence of various catalysts, e.g., aluminium sulphate. Isomerisation may be due (i) to the change in position of the double bond, which always tends to move towards the centre of the chain, e.g., pent-1-ene isomerises to pent-2-ene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3$$

(ii) To the migration of a methyl group, e.g., but-1-ene isomerises to isobutene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2 C = CH_2$$

(i) and (ii) may, or may not, occur together.

12. Olefins add on to isoparaffins in the presence of a catalyst, many of which are known, but the one usually employed is concentrated sulphuric acid, e.g., ethylene adds on to isobutane to form a mixture of 2-methylpentane and 2:3-dimethylbutane:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H.SO.}]{\mathrm{C_1H_4}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} + (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{CH_3})_2$$

This reaction is particularly useful for preparing "iso-octane", 2:2:4-trimethylpentane (see p. 57) by treating isobutane with isobutene in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + CH_2 = C(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$$

13. Diborane reacts rapidly at room temperature with olefins, giving the trialkylborons. Terminal olefins give the primary alkylborons, which can be oxidised by hydrogen peroxide to primary alcohols (Brown et al., 1957):

$$R \cdot CH = CH_2 \xrightarrow{B_aH_a} (R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 -)_3B \xrightarrow{H_aO_a} 3R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \quad (g.)$$

The s- and t-alkylborons obtained from non-terminal olefins readily undergo isomerisation to primary alkylborons when heated. The addition of diborane is known as *hydroboronation* (hydroboration).

If the trialkylboron is treated with a carboxylic acid, the corresponding alkane is obtained by protolysis:

$$(R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 -)_3 B \xrightarrow{H^+} 3R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$$

Thus the final product is formed by reduction of an olefin by a non-catalytic method.

In the same way, acetylenes undergo monohydroboronation and protolysis to give almost pure *cis*-olefin:

$$-C = C - \xrightarrow{B_3H_6} (-CH = \stackrel{!}{C} -)_3B \xrightarrow{H^+} -CH = CH -$$

14. Olefins condense with acetic anhydride, (CH₃·CO)₂O, in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., zinc chloride, to form unsaturated ketones, e.g., ethylene forms methyl vinyl ketone:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + (CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} CH_2 = CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

Acid chlorides, alkyl chlorides and α -halogenated ethers also combine with olefins in the presence of aluminium chloride, e.g.,

All of these condensations are examples of the Friedel-Crafts reaction in aliphatic compounds (see p. 529).

15. Olefins readily polymerise in the presence of suitable catalysts, e.g., isobutene gives a polymer in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$nC_4H_8 \longrightarrow (C_4H_8)_n$$

When two compounds have the same empirical formula but differ in molecular weight, the more complicated compound is called a polymer of the simpler one. The term polymerisation was used originally to indicate the process that took place when a single substance—the monomer—gave products having the same empirical formula but different molecular weights, each of these being a multiple of that of the monomer. As the investigation of polymerisation reactions progressed, it was found that many compounds of high molecular weight, although they produced a large number of monomer molecules on suitable treatment, did not always have exactly the same empirical formula as the parent monomer. This led to a modification of the definitions of the terms polymer and polymerisation. ing to Carothers (1931) polymerisation is best defined as intermolecular combinations that are functionally capable of proceeding indefinitely. This definition implies that there is no limit theoretically to the size of the polymer In practice, however, the polymer ceases to grow, for various reasons (see below). The terms polymer and polymerisation are now used mainly in connection with high molecular weight compounds, which, in addition to being called polymers, are also known as macromolecules.

There are two types of polymerisation, addition polymerisation and

condensation polymerisation.

Addition Polymerisation. Addition polymerisation occurs among molecules containing double or triple bonds; but in certain cases it can also occur between bifunctional compounds that result from the opening of ring structures (see, e.g., ethylene oxide). There is no liberation of small molecules during addition polymerisation.

A very important group of olefinic compounds that undergo addition polymerisation is of the type CH₂=CHY, where Y may be H, X, CO₂R

CN, etc.:

$$nCH_2 = C \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} CH_2 - C - \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ Y \end{pmatrix}$$

There are three possible ways in which this polymerisation can occur:

(i) Head to tail: —CH2•CHY—CH2•CHY—

(ii) Head to head and tail to tail:

(iii) A random arrangement involving (i) and (ii).

Experimental work seems to indicate that (i) is favoured.

Most polymerisations are carried out in the presence of catalysts, and polymerisation of olefins can be accelerated by ionic-type catalysts or radicaltype catalysts. Both types of reaction consist of a number of steps which follow one another consecutively and rapidly, and appear to take place in three principal steps:

- (i) The initiation or activation.(ii) The growth or propagation.(iii) The termination or cessation.

If M represents the monomer, the series of reactions may be represented as follows:

The Ionic Mechanism of Catalysis. The ionic mechanism is believed to take place in the presence of certain metallic and non-metallic halides such as $AlCl_3$, $SnCl_4$ or BF_3 . In certain cases sulphuric acid also catalyses polymerisation. Ionic catalysts are usually electrophilic reagents, and Hunter and Yohe (1933) have suggested that the chain-initiating action of these catalysts depends on their electrophilic nature, and consists in the catalyst acquiring a share in a pair of electrons (the π -electrons) from the double bond of the monomer, e.g.,

(i)
$$AlCl_3 + \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\longleftarrow} Cl_3 \overline{Al} \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} Cl_3 \overline{Al} \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{-}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel$$

In (iii) a proton is lost, thus producing a double bond at the end of the chain so that the molecule becomes deactivated, and hence ceases to grow (see also below).

The Free-Radical Mechanism of Catalysis. The most important cases of addition polymerisation are those which take place by chain reactions and are brought about by catalysts that are known to generate free radicals. The most widely used catalysts are the organic and inorganic peroxides and the salts of the peracids, e.g., benzoyl peroxide, acetyl peroxide, hydrogen peroxide, potassium perborate, etc.

Staudinger (1932) was the first to suggest a free-radical mechanism, and it may be as follows for an organic peroxide:

(i)
$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2RCO_2 \cdot RCO_2 \cdot$$

(iii) The cessation reaction may take place:

(a) By the collision between two growing chains which unite to form a deactivated molecule:

$$2R-M_n \cdot \longrightarrow R-M_n-M_n-R$$

Alternatively, disproportionation (see p. 51) may take place, and thereby deactivate the growing molecules.

$$2R-(-\overset{\overset{}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}{\overset{}}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}{\overset{}}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{}}{\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{\overset{}}{\overset{$$

(b) By the collision between the growing chain and a catalyst radical:

$$R-M_n + R \longrightarrow R-M_n-R$$

(c) By the collision between the growing chain and impurities which have become activated during the polymerisation, e.g.,

$$R-M_{n}\cdot + YZ \longrightarrow R-M-Y+Z\cdot$$

$$Z\cdot + M \longrightarrow ZM\cdot \xrightarrow{M} ZM_{n}\cdot$$

$$ZM_{n}\cdot + YZ \longrightarrow Z-M_{n}-Y+Z\cdot$$

In "uncatalysed" polymerisation, i.e., in the absence of foreign substances, initiation may begin by dimerisation of the monomer:

Not only can addition polymerisation take place among molecules of one kind, but it can also take place among molecules of two kinds, when the phenomenon is known as *copolymerisation* or *interpolymerisation*.

Condensation Polymerisation or Polycondensation. In condensation polymerisation, bi- or polyfunctional molecules condense with one another, and in doing so repeatedly eliminate a small molecule such as water, ammonia, hydrogen chloride, etc., as the reaction proceeds. This type of polymerisation takes place by a series of steps, and is discussed in various parts of the text (see, for example, the aldol condensation, the esterification of glycols with dibasic acids, etc.).

Polymers may be classified into three groups:

(i) natural, e.g., rubber, proteins, cellulose; (ii) semi-synthetic, e.g. nitrocellulose, cellulose acetate; and (iii) synthetic, e.g., nylon, bakelite, perspex.

Plastics form a group of high polymers which have a fair range of deformability and mouldability, particularly at high temperatures. In plastics the polymers formed do not all have the same molecular weight, and since the polymers are not amenable to the ordinary methods of separation, the molecular weight of a "polymer" is the average molecular weight. Polymerisation is carried out with the object of building up compounds with predicted properties, and since the properties of a plastic depend on the degree of polymerisation it is necessary to stop polymerisation when the desired average molecular weight is reached. This may be done by various means, e.g., variation of the concentration of the catalyst. The average molecular weight of plastics varies from about 20,000 (e.g., nylon) to several hundred thousand (e.g., polyvinyl chloride, 250,000).

to several hundred thousand (e.g., polyvinyl chloride, 250,000).

Plastics are generally tough, resistant to the action of acids and alkalis, and not very much affected over a fair range of temperature. They can be moulded to

any desired shape or form.

Plastics are of two main types, thermoplastic and thermosetting. Thermoplastics are linear polymers which are soluble in many organic solvents, and which soften on heating and become rigid on cooling. The process of heat-softening, moulding and cooling can be repeated as often as desired, and hardly affects the properties of the plastic. Typical thermoplastics are cellulose acetate, nitrocellulose and vinyl polymers such as polythene, perspex, etc.

Thermosetting plastics are three-dimensional polymers which are insoluble in any kind of solvent, and which can be heat-treated only once before they set, *i.e.*, their formation, after which heating results in chemical decomposition, and hence they cannot be "reworked". Typical thermosetting plastics are phenol-formaldehyde, urea-formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde, silicones, etc.

In thermoplastics the chains are, more or less, free chemically, but are held together by van der Waals' forces. It is possible, however, to link together these linear molecules (cf. the rungs of a ladder) and the cross-linking agent converts the thermoplastic into a thermosetting plastic, e.g., in the vulcanisation of rubber the

sulphur cross-links the long chains. Furthermore, such thermosetting plastics may be reconverted into thermoplastics by opening the cross-links, e.g., the reclaiming of rubber. Most thermosetting plastics may be regarded as cross-linked polymers.

Those plastics which do not soften very much with rise in temperature are made soft and readily workable by the addition of certain compounds known as *plasticisers*; e.g., polyvinyl chloride is extremely stiff and hard, but addition of tricresyl phosphate makes it soft and rubber-like.

Some Individual Olefins.

The first member of the olefin series is methylene (carbene), CH₂, but it exists only as a free *diradical* with a very short life period. It has been prepared by heating diazomethane at very low pressure:

$$CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow \dot{C}H_2 + N_2$$

The two electrons must be *unpaired* for methylene to be a diradical. It has been shown that methylene and its derivatives behave as electrophilic reagents. Methylene reacts with alkyl chlorides to attack both the C—Cl and a-C—H bonds (inter alia, Bradley et al., 1961); e.g. (see also p. 483):

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2CI \xrightarrow{CH_3} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2CI + CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHCI \cdot CH_3$$

Ethylene, ethene, C_2H_4 . Ethylene may be prepared by any of the general methods of preparation (except 2), but the most convenient laboratory method is to heat ethanol with excess of concentrated sulphuric acid.

The mechanism of this reaction is the reverse of hydration of olefins (p. 70):

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{H}^+ \xleftarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}_2^+ \xleftarrow{\text{slow}} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5^+ + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

The carbonium ion, which is unstable, stabilises itself by eliminating a proton to form ethylene; the proton is accepted by a water molecule (a Lewis base):

$$\overset{\dagger}{\text{CH}_2} \hspace{-2pt} \overset{\longleftarrow}{\text{CH}_2} \hspace{-2pt} - \hspace{-2pt} \text{H} \overset{\leftarrow}{\text{OH}_2} \hspace{-2pt} \overset{\text{fast}}{\longleftarrow} \hspace{-2pt} \text{CH}_2 \hspace{-2pt} = \hspace{-2pt} \text{CH}_2 \hspace{-2pt} + \hspace{-2pt} \text{H}_3\text{O}^+$$

For each molecule of ethanol converted into ethylene, one molecule of water is produced, and hence, after a time the sulphuric acid becomes too dilute to behave as a dehydrating agent.

Ethylene may also be prepared by the electrolysis of sodium succinate (Kolbe):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{COONa} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{COONa} \end{array} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ || \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} + 2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{NaOH} + \text{H}_2 \end{array}$$

Ethylene is still prepared industrially by passing ethanol vapour over heated alumina at about 350°:

$$C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_2H_4 + H_2O$$

It is, however, now being obtained in huge quantities as a by-product in the cracking of crude oil and of ethane, propane and butane. Ethylene is also manufactured by the partial hydrogenation of acetylene, which is mixed with hydrogen and passed, at 200°, over a palladium catalyst carried on a silica-gel support:

$$CH = CH + H_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH_2 \quad (95\%)$$

Ethylene is a colourless gas, b.p. -105° , sparingly soluble in water. It burns with a smoky luminous flame. It has been claimed that carefully

purified ethylene does not react with chlorine in the absence of light. When ethylene is heated with chlorine at 350-450°, vinyl chloride is obtained:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CHCl + HCl$$

The unsaturated radical CH_2 —CH—is known as the *vinyl* or *ethenyl* radical. Ethylene may be oxidised by atmospheric oxygen in the presence of silver as catalyst, and at a temperature of 200–400°, to ethylene oxide:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 - CH_2$$

Ethylene polymerises under high pressure and high temperature to form polyethylene or polythene:

$$nCH_2 = CH_2 \longrightarrow -(-CH_2 - CH_2 -)_n -$$

This polymerisation is catalysed by traces of oxygen (which produces the free radicals). Polythene is very resistant to acids, bases, and most of the

usual organic solvents.

or

Ethylene is used for ripening fruit. Unripe fruit may be transported easily without damage, and ripens on exposure to ethylene gas for a few days, the product being apparently indistinguishable from the natural ripened fruit. Ethylene is also used as an anæsthetic, in the manufacture of mustard gas and plastics (polythene, polystyrene), and in the preparation of various solvents such as glycol dioxan cellosolves, etc.

of various solvents such as glycol, dioxan, cellosolves, etc.

Structure of Ethylene. The molecular formula of ethylene is C₂H₄.

Two carbon atoms have the power to combine with six univalent atoms or groups, as in ethane, neopentane, etc. There are only four univalent hydrogen atoms present in ethylene: therefore ethylene is said to be unsaturated, and should be capable of adding on two univalent atoms or groups, and this, as we have seen above, is observed in practice. Thus the structure of ethylene must be such as to be capable of undergoing addition reactions. Assuming carbon to be quadrivalent and hydrogen univalent, three structures are possible for ethylene:

Two isomeric compounds of molecular formula $C_2H_4Cl_2$ are possible: $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$ and $CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$. Both isomers are known, one (ethylene chloride) being formed by the direct combination between ethylene and chlorine, and the other (ethylidene chloride) by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on acetaldehyde. The structure of ethylidene chloride is $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$ (see p. 116); hence the structure of ethylene chloride is $CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$. If (I) were the structure of ethylene, then the addition of chlorine should give ethylidene chloride, and not ethylene chloride. We may, therefore, reject structure (I). Furthermore, since (I) is unsymmetrical it would have a fairly large dipole moment; actually ethylene has a zero dipole moment.

Structure (II) represents ethylene as possessing "free" bonds by means

Structure (II) represents ethylene as possessing "free" bonds by means of which addition compounds are formed. If this is the structure, then we might expect that the "free" carbon valencies could be satisfied one at a

time, i.e., a compound such as $CH_2Cl\cdot CH_2$ — should be possible, since if two "free" valencies can exist independently of each other, it is logical to suppose that one can exist by itself. No such compounds have yet been obtained, and in practice it is found that unsaturated compounds always combine with an *even* number of univalent atoms or groups. Hence structure (III) is accepted for ethylene, and the presence of the double bond (consisting of one σ -bond and one π -bond) is supported by other evidence (length of the carbon–carbon bond; geometrical isomerism).

In structures (I) and (II) the unconnected bonds indicate one electron. If the two electrons in (II) are paired, they form a covalent bond, and so (II) and (III) are the same. On the other hand, if the two electrons in (II) are unpaired, then (II) is a diradical. Since ethylene does not exhibit the usual

properties of a free diradical, we must reject (II).

The presence of a double (or triple bond) in an organic compound may be found readily by means of bromine water, bromine in chloroform solution, or dilute alkaline permanganate. If the compound under investigation is unsaturated, then the above reagents are decolorised. Perbenzoic acid or monoperphthalic acid can be used to detect the presence of a double bond, and also to estimate the number of double bonds (see also iodine value, p. 261).

Propylene, propene, C₃H₆, may be prepared by heating propanol or *iso*-propanol with sulphuric acid (mechanism as for ethylene from ethanol):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{-}\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$$

It may also be prepared by heating propyl iodide with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{I} + \text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{KI} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Propylene is obtained commercially in huge quantities as a by-product in the cracking of petroleum. It is a colourless gas, b.p. -48°, insoluble in water but fairly soluble in ethanol. It is used industrially for the preparation of isopropanol, glycerol, etc.

paration of isopropanol, glycerol, etc.

The unsaturated radical CH₂=CH·CH₂— is known as the allyl radical.

Butylenes, butenes, C₄H₈. There are three isomeric butylenes, and all

 $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2$, α -butylene, but-1-ene (b.p. $-6 \cdot r^\circ$); $CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3$, β -butylene, but-2-ene (b.p. r°); $(CH_3)_2C = CH_2$, isobutylene, isobutylene

(b.p. -6.6°).

All the butylenes are obtained from cracked petroleum. The I- and 2-butenes are used for the preparation of sec.-butanol (q.v.), and isobutene for tert.-butanol (q.v.). But-2-ene differs from its isomers in that it exhibits geometrical isomerism (see p. 425). isoButene differs from its isomers in that it reacts with chlorine at room temperature to give mainly substitution products, substitution occurring in the allyl position (see p. 67). Thus 3-chloro-2-methylprop-I-ene is the main product, and is accompanied by a small amount of the addition product I: 2-dichloro-2-methylpropane:

UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS WITH TWO OR MORE DOUBLE BONDS

When the compound contains two double bonds, it is known as a diolefin or alkadiene, and has the general formula C_nH_{2n-2} ; when there are three double bonds present, the compound is known as a triolefin or alkatriene, and has the general formula C_nH_{2n-4} ; etc.

Nomenclature. The longest carbon chain containing the maximum number of double bonds is chosen as the parent hydrocarbon, and the

chain is so numbered as to give the lowest possible numbers to the double

bonds, e.g.,

$$\overset{\overset{\circ}{\text{CH}_3}}{\overset{\circ}{\text{CH}_3}}\overset{\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}}{\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{H}_2} = \overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{H}_2} = \overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ}{\text{H}_2} = \overset{\circ}{\text{C}}\overset{\circ$$

There are three different types of compounds with two double bonds.

1. Hydrocarbons with isolated double bonds contain the arrangement $C=CH\cdot(CH_2)_n\cdot CH=C\subset$, where n>O. One of the simplest compounds of this type is diallyl or hexa-1:5-diene, which may be prepared by the action of sodium on allyl iodide (Wurtz reaction):

$$2 \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{I} + 2 \text{Na} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH}_2 + 2 \text{NaI}$$

Diallyl is a liquid, b.p. 59.6°. It resembles the olefins chemically, but since there are two double bonds present, it may add on two or four univalent atoms or groups according to the relative concentration of the addendum; e.g., with excess bromine, diallyl forms 1:2:5:6-tetrabromohexane.

2. Hydrocarbons with cumulated double bonds contain the arrangement C=C=C. The simplest compound of this type is allene or propadiene, which may be prepared by heating 1:2:3-tibromorpopane with solid potassium hydroxide, and then treating the resulting 2: 3-dibromopropylene with zinc dust in methanol solution:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{Br}\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Br}\xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{CH}_2\text{Br}\text{-}\text{CBr} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/CH}_4\text{OH}} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/CH}_4\text{OH}} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/CH}_4\text{OH}}$$

Allene is a gas, b.p. -32° . With bromine it forms 1:2:2:3-tetrabromopropane; with sulphuric acid it forms acetone; and when treated with sodium in ether, the sodium derivative of propyne (CH₃·C=CNa) is produced. Allene compounds are very important from the view of stereochemistry (see p. 432).

In recent years, allenes have been prepared from acetylenes by rearrangement, e.g.,

$$CH = C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{\text{aq. } K_2CO_3} CH_2 = C = CH \cdot CO_2H$$

A novel way of preparing allenes is by treating the cyclopropane derivative formed from an olefin and bromoform and alkali with magnesium in ether (Doering et al., 1958). Dibromomethylene is an intermediate (p. 117).

An extended allene type of linkage gives the *cumulene* system, the simplest member of which is butatriene, and this has been prepared by debrominating 1: 4-dibromobut-2-yne with zinc (Schubert *et al.*, 1952, 1954):

$$CH_2Br\cdot C = C \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{Zn} CH_2 = C = C - CH_2$$

3. Hydrocarbons with conjugated double bonds contain single and double bonds arranged alternately, i.e., they contain the arrangement —C—CH—CH—CH—CH—. The simplest member of this group of compounds is buta-r: 3-diene, which may be prepared by passing cyclohexene over a heated nichrome wire (an alloy of nickel, chromium and iron):

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH & CH & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH & CH & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH & CH_2 & CH_2 \end{array} (65-75\%)$$

Butadiene is prepared technically:

(i) By dehydrogenating *n*-butane (from natural gas or from petroleum gas) or but-1-ene (from cracked petroleum) by passing the gas over a heated catalyst, *e.g.*, chromic oxide on an alumina support.

(ii) By passing a mixture of butane-I: 3-diol and steam, in proportions 4: I, over trisodium phosphate containing 20 per cent. free phosphoric acid, heated at 270°:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-2H_2O} CH_2 = CH - CH = CH_2$$
 (85–90%)

(iii) By passing ethanol vapour over a catalyst of alumina-zinc oxide heated at 420-470°:

$$2C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH - CH = CH_2 + 2H_2O + H_2 \quad (20\%)$$

The yield is low owing to the production of many by-products such as acetic acid, ethyl acetate, ether, etc. The yield of butadiene has been improved by passing a mixture of ethanol and acetaldehyde over a heated catalyst of silica-gel plus 2 per cent. tantalum oxide:

$$C_2H_5OH + CH_3 \cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH - CH = CH_2 + 2H_2O$$

(iv) By passing a mixture of acetylene and formaldehyde over copper acetylide as catalyst, whereupon butynediol CH₂OH·C≡C·CH₂OH is formed. This is hydrogenated catalytically to butane-I: 4-diol, which, on catalytic dehydration, gives butadiene:

$$\begin{split} \text{C$_2$H$_2$} + \text{2H\cdot$CHO} &\xrightarrow{\text{Cu$_2$C$}} \text{C$H$_2$OH\cdotC} \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{C}\text{C}\text{C}\text{C}\text{H}_2$OH} \xrightarrow{\text{-2H_2$O}} \text{C$H$_2$-CH} \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{C}\text{C}\text{H}_2OH\cdotCH$_2$\cdotCH$_2$OH} \xrightarrow{\text{-2H_2$O}} \text{C$H$_2$-CH} \\ \end{split}$$

Butadiene is a gas, b.p. -2.6° . Under the influence of sodium as catalyst, butadiene readily polymerises to a product which has been used as a rubber substitute known as *buna* (*butadiene* + Na). The mechanism of this polymerisation is uncertain, but a possibility is discussed in connection with isoprene (see below).

A very important diolefin is isoprene or 2-methylbut-1:3-diene, CH₃

CH₂—CH—CH₂, which may be obtained, in poor yield, by the slow

distillation of rubber. It may be prepared by heating isopentanol with hydrogen chloride, and chlorinating the resulting isoamyl chloride, three dichlorides thereby being formed:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\mathrm{OH} + \mathrm{HCl} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

$$(CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{Cl_2} CH_3 \cdot CH_2Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CHCl \cdot CH_2Cl + CH_2Cl + CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_3Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_3Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_3Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_3Cl + (CH_3)_3CH \cdot CH_3Cl + (CH_3)_3Cl + (CH$$

(I) is the main product (cf. p. 54), and this, when passed over soda-lime heated at 500°, gives isoprene:

$$(CH_3)_2CCl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{-2HCl} CH_2 = C - CH = CH_2$$

Isoprene is prepared technically:

(i) By passing isopentane or isopentene over heated chromic oxide on an alumina support (cf. butadiene).

(ii) By treating acetone as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{3} \\ CH_{3} \\ CH_{3} \\ \end{array} C = O \xrightarrow{NaNH_{3}} CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{8}H_{3}} CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{2}CH_{3}} CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{1}CH_{2}} CH_{3} \\ CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{2}CH} \xrightarrow{H_{3}} CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{1}CH_{2}} CH_{3} \\ CH_{3} - C \xrightarrow{C_{2}CH} CH_{3} + C \xrightarrow{C_{1}CH_{2}} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{Al_{9}O_{9}} CH_{2} = C \xrightarrow{C_{1}CH_{2}CH_{2}} CH_{2} \\ CH_{3} + C \xrightarrow{C_{1}CH_{3}} CH_{3} + C \xrightarrow{$$

Isoprene is a liquid, b.p. 35°, and when heated with sodium at 60° it polymerises to a substance resembling natural rubber. The mechanism of this polymerisation is not settled; one that has been suggested is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\!\! \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \!\!-\!\! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH}_2 + \text{Na}^{\raisebox{-.5ex}{$\scriptscriptstyle \bullet$}} \!\!-\!\! \text{Na} \overset{\raisebox{-.5ex}{$\scriptscriptstyle \bullet$}}{\text{CH}_2} \!\!-\!\! \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \!\!-\!\! \text{CH}_2^{\raisebox{-.5ex}{$\scriptscriptstyle \bullet$}} \\ \downarrow \text{CH}_3 \!\!=\!\! \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \!\!-\!\! \text{CH}_2 \!\!-\!\! \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \!\!-\!\! \text{CH}_2^{\raisebox{-.5ex}{$\scriptscriptstyle \bullet$}}, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

Compounds containing conjugated double bonds have physical and chemical properties that are not usually shown by compounds containing isolated or cumulated double bonds, e.g., they show optical exaltation, undergo abnormal addition reactions, readily polymerise, and undergo the Diels-Alder reaction (p. 472). Another typical reaction of conjugated dienes is their combination with sulphur dioxide to form a cyclic sulphone, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\! \text{CH--CH}_2 + \text{SO}_2 \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} \text{CH--CH}_2 \\ \text{CH--CH}_2 \end{matrix} \\ \text{sulpholene} \\ \end{array}$$

Thiele's Theory of Partial Valencies. Conjugated compounds undergo abnormal addition reactions, e.g., when butadiene is treated with bromine

(one molecule), two dibromo-derivatives are obtained, the "expected" 3:4-dibromobut-1-ene (1:2-addition), and the "unexpected" 1:4-dibromobut-2-ene (1:4-addition):

It has been found that I: 2- and I: 4-additions usually take place together, and the relative amount of each generally depends on the nature of the addendum and the conditions of the experiment, e.g., type of solvent, temperature.

Thiele (1899) suggested his theory of partial valencies to account for I: 4-addition. According to Thiele, a single bond is sufficient to hold two carbon atoms together, and the two valencies of the double bond are not used completely to link the two carbon atoms, but only one valency and part of the other, leaving a surplus on each carbon atom. Thiele called this surplus valency the residual or partial valency, and if we represent it by a broken line, the formula of butadiene (and similarly for any other conjugated compound) may be written CH₂—CH—CH—CH₂. Thiele

thought that the two middle partial valencies mutually satisfied each other rather than remain free. Thus the actual state of butadiene is

The ends of this molecule are therefore the most active parts, and so addition of, e.g., bromine will occur at these ends, first by attachment through the partial valencies, and then by each bromine atom acquiring a full valency, causing the two middle carbon atoms to utilise completely the two valencies left:

Thiele's theory explains I: 4-addition so well that it does not account at all for I: 2-addition!

The mechanism of addition to conjugated systems is now believed to be as follows. The first problem to solve is which carbon atom in butadiene is attacked initially. Assuming that the addition mechanism is the same as for monoolefins (i.e., a two-stage electrophilic reaction), then attack on butadiene will be at a terminal carbon atom since this becomes electron rich through the +E effect of the vinyl group:

$$\text{CH}_2\!\!=\!\!\text{CH--CH--\!CH}_2\!\!\stackrel{\frown}{=}\!\!\text{Cl}\!\longrightarrow\!\text{CH}_2\!\!=\!\!\text{CH--\!CH--\!CH}_2\!\text{Cl}+\text{Cl---}$$

The carbonium ion produced is a resonance hybrid:

$$CH_2$$
= CH - CH - CH_2CI \longleftrightarrow CH_2 - CH = CH - CH_2CI

This resonance hybrid may be represented as

$$\overset{\delta+}{\text{CH}_2}$$
—CH—CH—CH₂Cl

Thus there are two positive centres which may be attacked by the chloride ion in the second step.

$$\begin{array}{c} ^{\delta +} \operatorname{CH}_{2} \text{----}\operatorname{CH} \text{---}\operatorname{CH}_{2}\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl}^{-} \longrightarrow \\ \operatorname{CH}_{2} \text{----}\operatorname{CH}\operatorname{---}\operatorname{CH}\operatorname{cl} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_{2}\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{CH}_{2}\operatorname{Cl} \cdot \operatorname{CH} \text{----}\operatorname{CH}_{2}\operatorname{Cl} \\ \end{array}$$

Since both the 1:2- and 1:4-dichlorides are formed in practice, the interesting question is whether one can predict which isomer will predominate. The answer to this depends on whether the isomers are interconvertible or not under the conditions of the experiment. If the conditions permit interconversion, then the thermodynamically controlled product (i.e., the more stable one) will predominate. If the conditions do not permit interconversion, then the kinetically controlled product (i.e., the one formed faster) will predominate (p. 32). Consider the following:

$$-c$$
= c - c - x

In this type of structure, halogen hyperconjugation is possible (p. 270), and this makes the molecule more stable than one in which such hyperconjugation is not possible. Inspection of the two butadiene dichlorides shows that the 1:2-product has one chlorine-hyperconjugated system whereas the 1:4-product has two. Thus, the latter is more stable and so should be the thermodynamically controlled product if the two forms are interconvertible, and consequently will be the predominant product under these conditions. These predictions have been observed experimentally, e.g., Muskat et al. (1930) treated butadiene with chlorine under conditions where the two isomers were not interconvertible, and obtained about 60 per cent. of the 1:2- and 40 per cent. of the 1:4-product. This implies that the 1:2-compound is the kinetically controlled product. Pudovic (1949) heated each isomer at 200° and obtained the same equilibrium mixture containing about 30 per cent. 1:2- and 70 per cent. 1:4-. Thus, the 1:4-isomer is the thermodynamically controlled product, and predominates under conditions of interconvertibility.

The addition of halogen acid to butadiene also produces two products, the 1:2- and the 1:4-. Furthermore, since the proton adds on first, this adds always to the *terminal* carbon, the halogen then adding at position 2 or 4.

In the foregoing account of the reactions of butadiene, we have assumed that the molecule has the structure CH_2 —CH—CH— CH_2 . There are, however, alternative electronic structures which are *charged*. Hence butadiene is a resonance hybrid of a number of resonating structures:

$$\label{eq:ch2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH$_2$=CH-CH_2$} \longleftrightarrow \text{CH$_2$=CH-$\r{C}H$_2$} \longleftrightarrow \\ \mathring{\text{CH}$_2$-CH=CH-$\r{C}H$_2$}, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

There is still, however, another contributing structure of butadiene, viz., (I). The two electrons have antiparallel spins, since the number of unpaired electrons in each resonating structure must be the same (p. 17). Thus these paired electrons would, in the ordinary way, form a covalent bond. The distance between them, however, is too great for them to form an effective bond. Consequently this bond is referred to as a formal bond, and may be

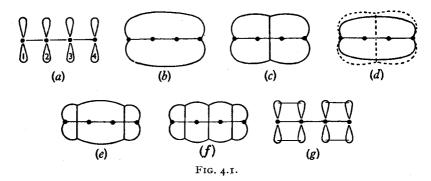
$$\dot{\text{CH}_2}\text{--CH} = \text{CH} - \dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \dot{\text{CH}_2} - \text{CH} = \text{CH} - \dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} - \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2$$

represented by a dotted line (II). Structure (II) carries no charges and so (II) and (III) (also uncharged) are probably the main contributing resonance structures (p. 20). If only these two contribute significantly to the resonance hybrid, the resonance energy can be expected to be small. Actually, calculation has shown it to be about 3.5 k.cal./mole. Thus in butadiene there are no "pure" single or double bonds. The lengths of the bonds will therefore be somewhere between the extremes (of single and double bonds), the actual values depending on the relative contributions of the resonating structures to the resonance hybrid. Furthermore, if we assume that the charged structures make a very small contribution, it might at first sight

appear that the butadiene molecule possesses a dipole moment. This, however, is not so in practice, the reason being that the terminal carbon atoms can be either positive or negative, since the electronic displacements can occur equally well in either direction. For this reason butadiene is said to exhibit balanced conjugation, and this may be represented as:

$$CH_2 = CH - CH - CH_2$$

So far we have considered the structure of conjugated compounds from V.B. theory. When we consider their structure from M.O. theory, we get a different picture. Each carbon atom in butadiene has the trigonal arrangement, and Fig. 1(a) shows the p_z electrons associated with each carbon atom. If the molecule is planar, the p_z electron of C_2 overlaps that of C_1 as much as it does that of C_3 , etc. Therefore all four p_z orbitals can be treated as forming an M.O. covering all four carbon atoms (b). In this condition, a pair of electrons are no longer mainly confined to the region between two nuclei, i.e., the bond formed is no



longer a localised bond. The bonds produced are therefore called delocalised bonds. In all, there are four delocalised M.O.s possible from the combination of the four π -electrons, two bonding and two anti-bonding M.O.s (p. 30). The two bonding M.O.s are shown in Fig. 1(b) and (c), the former having one nodal plane, and the latter, two. The two anti-bonding M.O.s are shown in (e), with three nodal planes, and in (f), with four nodal planes. As pointed out on p. 31, as the number of nodes in an orbital increases, so does the energy associated with that orbital. Furthermore, according to the Pauli exclusion principle, no more than two electrons can occupy the same M.O. Therefore in the ground state of butadiene, two of the π -electrons will occupy the M.O. in (b), and the other two the M.O. with the next higher energy level, i.e., (c). Fig. (d) represents these two in one diagram, i.e., (d) represents the ground state of butadiene. In any excited state of butadiene, electrons will occupy orbitals (e) or (f) (see p. 777).

In general, in a conjugated system containing $2n\pi$ -electrons, there are n bonding and n anti-bonding orbitals, and in the ground state these electrons will

occupy, in pairs, the n M.O.s of lowest energy.

In delocalised bonds, the electrons have greater freedom of movement than in localised bonds. Thus the total energy of the system is lowered, i.e., delocalisation of bonds makes the molecule more stable. Hence the butadiene molecule in state (d) is more stable than in state (g), in which the π -electrons are paired as "isolated" pairs, each pair covering two carbon atoms. This energy of stabilisation could be called the delocalisation energy (Coulson), but it is more usual to call it the resonance energy. It should here be noted that delocalisation of bonds is in M.O. theory what resonance is in V.B. theory.

of bonds is in M.O. theory what resonance is in V.B. theory.

It can be seen from the foregoing discussion that the M.O. treatment of conjugated systems does away with the idea of "bonds" between atoms (this applies to the π -bonds, and not to the σ -bonds). Also the term conjugation is

used in M.O. theory to indicate the existence in any part of a molecule of molecular orbitals which embrace three or more nuclei. It is important to note that a conjugated system (defined as above) always contains double bonds, but that the reverse is not necessarily the case. e.g., ethylene.

Since the electron cloud covers the whole of the butadiene molecule, an electrical influence in one part of the system is easily propagated to another (cf. p. 517). Calculation (Coulson and Longuet-Higgins, 1947) has shown that when, for example, bromine attacks butadiene, the bromine molecule approaches the end of butadiene molecule most easily, and produces an alternate polarity:

The negative bromide ion can then attack C_2 or C_4 .

The relationship between the observed bond-length and the value expected on the assumption that it is a "pure" single or double bond has been put on a quantitative basis. In the V.B. method the double-bond character of a bond may be calculated from a knowledge

of the observed bond length, the values of the single bond in ethane, and the double bond in ethylene being taken as standard lengths for "pure" single and double bonds, respectively. Calculations by Pauling et al. (1933) have shown that the "single" bond in butadiene has about 20 per cent. double-bond character (see also below).

In the M.O. method, the character of a bond is defined by its fractional bond order, where the bond orders of 1, 2 and 3 are given to the bonds in ethane, ethylene and acetylene, respectively. Since also the method of calculation is different from that of the V.B. method, the numerical values obtained by the two methods are different. Even so, these values always correspond.

Coulson (1941, 1947) has shown that the butadiene molecule may be

represented as shown in (IV).

Calculation gives a bond order of 1.894 to the two outer "double" bonds, and a bond order of 1.447 to the central "single" bond. Thus the total bond number of either of the end carbon atoms is $2 \times 1.0 + 1.894 = 3.894$, and the total bond number of either middle carbon is 1.0 + 1.447 + 1.894 = 4.341. Furthermore, since calculation has shown that the maximum bond number for a carbon atom is 4.732, it follows that each carbon atom in butadiene has the "free valency" shown in (IV) (Coulson has suggested that free valency be represented by an arrow). On the other hand, if a structure containing fractional double bonds is written with single bonds labelled with the bond order, and charges are placed on the atoms, then the resulting diagram is known as a molecular diagram, e.g., the molecular diagram for benzene is (V) (see also p. 528). Among other things, a molecular diagram enables one to estimate the most likely points of attack (see, e.g., pyrrole, p. 750).

ACETYLENES OR ALKYNES

The acetylenes are unsaturated hydrocarbons that contain one triple bond. The simplest member of the series is acetylene CH≡CH, and hence this homologous series is often referred to as the "acetylene series". The acetylenes have the general formula C_nH_{2n-2} and the triple bond is also known as the "acetylenic bond". **Nomenclature.** One method is to name higher homologues as derivatives of acetylene, the first member of the series, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} \Longrightarrow \text{CH} & \text{methylacetylene} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} \Longrightarrow \text{C}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3 & \text{ethylmethylacetylene} \end{array}$$

In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature the class suffix is -yne, and the rules for numbering are as for the olefins (p. 63), e.g.,

CH=CH ethyne;
$$CH_3 \cdot C = C \cdot CH_3$$
 but-2-yne $(CH_3)_2 CH \cdot C = C \cdot CH_3$ 4-methylpent-2-yne

Acetylene or ethyne, C₂H₂, is the most important member of this series, and it may be prepared by any of the following methods:

1. By the action of water on calcium carbide:

$$CaC_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_2 + Ca(OH)_2$$

This method of preparation is used industrially, since calcium carbide is readily manufactured by heating calcium oxide with coke in an electric furnace:

$$CaO + 3C \longrightarrow CaC_2 + CO$$

Acetylene prepared from calcium carbide is not pure, but contains small amounts of phosphine, hydrogen sulphide, arsine, ammonia, etc.; the impurities present depend on the purity of the calcium carbide used. Scrubbing with water is usually sufficient to reduce the amount of all the impurities, except phosphine, below the limit necessary for the safe application of acetylene for technical purposes. Phosphine is removed by means of oxidising agents, e.g., acid dichromate or bleaching-powder, whereby the phosphine is retained as phosphoric acid.

A more recent industrial preparation of acetylene is by the electric arc cracking of methane-ethane mixtures which are derived from coal hydro-

genation (p. 60).

2. By the action of ethanolic potassium hydroxide on ethylene bromide. The reaction proceeds in two steps, and under suitable conditions the intermediate product vinyl bromide may be isolated:

$$CH_2Br \cdot CH_2Br + KOH \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} CH_2 = CHBr + KBr + H_2O$$
 $CH_2 = CHBr + KOH \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} CH = CH + KBr + H_2O$

Ethylidene chloride may be used instead of ethylene bromide (or chloride), and this reaction also proceeds in two steps:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHCl}_2\xrightarrow{\text{KOH}}\text{CH}_2\text{---}\text{CHCl}\xrightarrow{\text{KOH}}\text{CH}\text{----}\text{CH}$$

Sodamide can be used instead of ethanolic potassium hydroxide, and the yields are usually better since there is less tendency to form by-products, e.g.,

$$-CH_2 \cdot CBr_2 - + 2NaNH_2 \longrightarrow -C \equiv C - + 2NaBr + 2NH_3$$

3. By the electrolysis of a concentrated solution of sodium (or potassium) salt of maleic or fumaric acid (q.v.):

$${\rm CO_2Na \cdot CH} = {\rm CH \cdot CO_2Na} + 2{\rm H_2O} \longrightarrow {\rm CH} = {\rm CH} + 2{\rm CO_2} + 2{\rm NaOH} + {\rm H_2}$$

4. By heating a trihalogen derivative of methane with silver powder; e.g., iodoform gives acetylene when heated with silver powder?

$$2CHI_3 + 6Ag \longrightarrow C_2H_2 + 6AgI$$

Acetylene may be synthesised from its elements by striking an electric arc between carbon rods in an atmosphere of hydrogen. It is also formed by the incomplete combustion of hydrocarbons, e.g., when a bunsen burner "strikes back".

Acetylene is a colourless gas, b.p. -84° , and has an ethereal smell when pure. It is sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in acetone. When compressed or liquefied acetylene is explosive, but its solution under pressure (10 atm.) in acetone adsorbed on some suitable porous material can be handled with safety. Acetylene burns with a luminous smoky flame (due to the high carbon content), and hence is used for lighting purposes. It is also used in the oxy-acetylene blow-pipe, a temperature above 3000° being reached. Acetylene is used for the preparation of a large number of compounds, e.g., acetaldehyde, ethanol, acetic acid, etc. (see text).

Owing to the presence of a triple bond, acetylene is more unsaturated than ethylene, and forms addition products with two or four univalent atoms or groups, never one or three (cf. ethylene). A triple bond consists of one σ -bond and two π -bonds. When two univalent atoms add on to a triple bond the digonal arrangement changes into the trigonal, and the further addition of two univalent atoms changes the trigonal into the tetrahedral arrangement. Under suitable conditions it is possible to isolate the intermediate olefin.

I. Acetylene adds on hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst, the reaction proceeding in two stages:

$$C_2H_2 \xrightarrow[\text{cat.}]{H_2} C_2H_4 \xrightarrow[\text{cat.}]{H_3} C_2H_6$$

The intermediate product, ethylene, can be obtained in very good yield if the hydrogenation is carried out with a *measured* amount of hydrogen in the presence of Adams' platinum-platinum oxide catalyst (p. 65), or palladium carried on a barium sulphate support.

The partial catalytic reduction of a triple bond in a wide variety of acetylenic compounds has been carried out, but great difficulty has been encountered in partially reducing a triple bond conjugated with a double bond, i.e., the following reduction has proved difficult:

$$-C \equiv C - C = C < \longrightarrow -CH = CH - C = C <$$

Lindlar (1952), however, has now developed a catalyst for the partial hydrogenation of a triple bond in a wide variety of compounds; it consists of a Pd—CaCO₃ catalyst partially inactivated by treatment with lead acetate, or better, by the addition of quinoline.

Dialkylacetylenes may be catalytically reduced to a mixture of cis- and transolefins, the former predominating. On the other hand, reduction with sodium in liquid ammonia produces the trans-olefin. Acetylenes are also reduced to trans-olefins by lithium in aliphatic amines of low molecular weight (Benkeser et al., 1955) cis—Reduction may be carried out with diborane (p. 76).

Lithium aluminium hydride may also be used to partially reduce a triple bond provided the molecule contains the grouping —C \equiv C—C(OH)<.

2. Acetylene adds on gaseous chlorine or bromine in the dark to form acetylene di- and tetrahalides; the addition is catalysed by light and metallic halides (cf. olefins):

$$C_2H_2 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_2H_2Cl_2 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_2H_2Cl_4$$

Direct combination of acetylene with chlorine may be accompanied by explosions, but this is prevented by the presence of a catalyst.

Acetylene reacts with dilute bromine water to produce acetylene di-

bromide:

$$CH = CH + Br_2 \xrightarrow{aq} CHBr = CHBr$$

With liquid bromine and in the absence of a solvent, acetylene forms acetylene tetrabromide:

$$C_2H_2 + 2Br_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_2Br_4$$

Acetylene adds on iodine with difficulty, but if the reaction is carried out in ethanolic solution, acetylene di-iodide is obtained:

$$CH \equiv CH + I_2 \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} CHI = CHI$$

Acetylene also undergoes substitution with halogen provided the right conditions are used, e.g., dichloroacetylene is formed when acetylene is passed into sodium hypochlorite solution at o° in the absence of air and light:

$$C_2H_2 + 2NaOCl \longrightarrow C_2Cl_2 + 2NaOH$$

Similarly, if acetylene is passed into a solution of iodine in liquid ammonia, di-iodoacetylene is formed (Vaughan and Nieuland, 1932):

$$C_2H_2 + 2I_2 + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow C_2I_2 + 2NH_4I$$

These substitution reactions of acetylene are characteristic of hydrogen only in the \equiv CH group. Thus, for example, but-1-yne, but not but-2-yne, can undergo these substitutions. Furthermore, it should be noted that the halogen of the \equiv CX group is very unreactive (cf. vinyl halides, p. 266).

3. Acetylene can add on the halogen acids, their order of reactivity being HI>HBr>HCl>HF; HF adds on only under pressure (cf. ethylene). The addition of the halogen acids can take place in the dark, but is catalysed by light or metallic halides. The addition is in accordance with Markownikoff's rule, e.g., acetylene combines with hydrogen bromide to form first vinyl bromide, and then ethylidene bromide:

$$CH = CH + HBr \longrightarrow CH_2 = CHBr \xrightarrow{HBr} CH_3 \cdot CHBr_2$$

Peroxides have the same effect on the addition of hydrogen bromide to acetylene as they have on olefins (p. 68).

The mechanism of the addition of halogens and halogen acids is probably the same as that for the olefins, e.g., the addition of hydrogen bromide may be as follows:

$$CH = CH^{2} + CH^{2} \longrightarrow Br^{2} CH = CH_{2} \longrightarrow CHBr = CH_{2}$$

Vinyl bromide may undergo the electromeric effect in two ways:

(i)
$$CH_2$$
= CH - Br $\longrightarrow CH_2$ - CH - Br

(ii)
$$CH_2 \xrightarrow{\widehat{C}} CH - Br \longrightarrow \overset{\stackrel{\leftarrow}{C}}{C} H_2 - \overset{\stackrel{\leftarrow}{C}}{C} H - Br$$

At the same time vinyl bromide is also capable of existing as a resonance hybrid (cf., e.g., chlorobenzene, p. 546):

$$CH_2$$
= CH - Br : \longleftrightarrow CH_2 - CH = $\overset{+}{Br}$:

Considering the high electron-affinity of bromine, (ii) would seem to be more likely than (i), and the bromine atom would therefore cause the electron drift to take place towards itself. Considering the resonance effect, the tendency would be to drive the electrons in the opposite direction to that of (ii), and since the resonance effect is much stronger than the inductive effect (p. 519) direction (i) will be the result; hence the addition of a molecule of hydrogen bromide to vinyl bromide is:

$$\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\text{Br-H}} \stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\text{CH}_2} = \text{CHBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \stackrel{\leftarrow}{\text{CHBr}} \stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\text{Br}} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHBr}_2$$

4. When passed into dilute sulphuric acid at 60° in the presence of mercuric sulphate as catalyst, acetylene adds on one molecule of water to form acetaldehyde. The mechanism of this hydration probably takes place via the formation of vinyl alcohol as an intermediate (cf. p. 70). Vinyl alcohol has not yet been isolated; all attempts to prepare it result in the formation of acetaldehyde (p. 265). Since we are suggesting it is an intermediate product, but that it has never been isolated in this reaction, we indicate this by enclosing vinyl alcohol in square brackets:*

$$\text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} [\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHOH}] \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$$

The conversion of acetylene into acetaldehyde is very important technically, since acetaldehyde can be used for the preparation of many important compounds (see text).

The homologues of acetylene form ketones when hydrated, e.g., methylacetylene gives acetone:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C}\text{=-CH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{N}_4} \text{[CH}_3\text{--C(OH)}\text{=-CH}_2] \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{--CO-CH}_3$$

5. When acetylene is passed into dilute hydrochloric acid at 65° in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst, vinyl chloride is formed:

$$CH \equiv CH + HCl \xrightarrow{Hg_3^+} CH_2 = CHCl$$

Acetylene adds on hydrogen cyanide in the presence of barium cyanide as catalyst to form vinyl cyanide:

$$CH \equiv CH + HCN \xrightarrow{Ba(CN)_2} CH_2 = CHCN$$

Vinyl cyanide is used in the manufacture of Buna N synthetic rubber, which is a copolymer of vinyl cyanide and butadiene.

When acetylene is passed into warm acetic acid in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst, vinyl acetate and ethylidene acetate are formed:

$$\label{eq:charge_charge} \begin{split} \text{CH} &= \text{CH}_{3} \cdot \text{CO}_{2} \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Hg}^{3+}} \text{CH}_{2} \\ &= \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{OC} \cdot \text{CH}_{3} + \text{CH}_{3} \cdot \text{CO}_{2} \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Hg}^{3+}} \text{CH}_{3} \cdot \text{CH} (\text{OOC} \cdot \text{CH}_{3})_{2} \end{split}$$

Vinyl acetate (liquid) is used in the plastic industry. Ethylidene acetate (liquid), when heated rapidly to 300-400°, gives acetic anhydride and acetaldehyde.

* In this book any compound that is suggested as an intermediate will be enclosed in square brackets provided that it has not been isolated in the reaction shown.

Acetylene reacts with nitric acid in the presence of mercuric ions to form nitroform, $CH(NO_3)_3$. Acetylene combines with arsenic trichloride to form Lewisite (p. 345). When acetylene is passed into methanol at 160–200° in the presence of a small amount (1–2 per cent.) of potassium methoxide and under pressure just high enough to prevent boiling, methyl vinyl ether is formed:

$$CH \equiv CH + CH_3OH \xrightarrow{CH_3OK} CH_2 = CH \cdot O \cdot CH_3$$

This is used for making the polyvinyl ether plastics.

This process whereby acetylene adds on to compounds containing an active hydrogen atom (p. 350) to form vinyl compounds is known as vinylation.

Acetylene and formaldehyde interact in the presence of copper acetylide as catalyst to form butynediol, together with smaller amounts of propargyl alcohol, CH=C·CH₂OH:

$$CH \equiv CH + HCHO \xrightarrow{Cu_2C_2} CH \equiv C \cdot CH_2OH$$

$$CH \equiv CH + 2HCHO \xrightarrow{Cu_2C_2} CH_2OH \cdot C \equiv C \cdot CH_2OH$$

Propargyl alcohol is used to prepare allyl alcohol, glycerol, etc. Butynediol

is used to prepare butadiene, etc.

This reaction in which acetylene (or any compound containing the \equiv CH group, *i.e.*, a methyne hydrogen atom) adds on to certain unsaturated links (such as in the carbonyl group), or eliminates a molecule of water by reaction with certain hydroxy-compounds, is known as **ethinylation**. Thus the above reactions with formaldehyde are examples of ethinylation; another example is the following:

$$R_2N \cdot CH_2OH + CH \equiv CH \longrightarrow R_2N \cdot CH_2 \cdot C \equiv CH + H_2O$$

Alkyl bromo- and chloro-methyl ethers (p. 354) add to acetylenes in the presence of the corresponding aluminium halide to form olefins (Bindácz et al, 1960); e.g.,

$$EtO \cdot CH_2Cl + CH = CH \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} EtO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CHCl$$

6. When acetylene is passed into hypochlorous acid solution, dichloro-acetaldehyde is formed:

$$CH \equiv CH + HOCl \longrightarrow [CHCl = CHOH] \xrightarrow{HOCl} CH(OH)_2] \longrightarrow CHCl_2 \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

Dichloroacetic acid, CHCl₂·CO₂H, is also formed by the oxidation of di-

chloroacetaldehyde by the hypochlorous acid.

7. Acetylene and its homologues form ozonides with ozone, and these compounds are decomposed by water to form diketones, which are then oxidised to acids by the hydrogen peroxide formed in the reaction:

$$R \cdot C \equiv C \cdot R' + O_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot C \xrightarrow{O} R' \xrightarrow{H_1O} R \cdot C \xrightarrow{C} C \cdot R' + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{} \longrightarrow \\ O \xrightarrow{O} O \xrightarrow{R \cdot CO_2H} R \cdot CO_2H + R' \cdot CO_2H$$

Acetylene is exceptional in that it gives glyoxal as well as formic acid (Hurd and Christ, 1936):

$$CH \equiv CH + O_3 \longrightarrow CH \xrightarrow{CH} CH \xrightarrow{H,O} CH \cdot CH$$

The triple bond in acetylenes is usually oxidised by potassium permanganate to give acid fission products:

$$R \cdot C \equiv C \cdot R' \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} R \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot R' \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} R \cdot CO_2H + R' \cdot CO_2H$$

The intermediate α -diketone can be isolated if the oxidation is carried out in the presence of magnesium sulphate.

8. When passed through a heated tube acetylene polymerises, to a small extent, to benzene.

$$3C_2H_2 \longrightarrow$$

Homologues of acetylene behave in a similar manner, e.g., methylacetylene polymerises to s-trimethylbenzene, and dimethylacetylene to hexamethylbenzene:

$$_{3}$$
CH $_{3}$ C \equiv CH $_{3}$ \rightarrow $_{CH_{3}}$ \rightarrow $_{CH_{3}}$

Under suitable conditions acetylene polymerises to cyclooctatetraene (q.v.):

$${}_{4}C_{2}H_{2} \longrightarrow {}_{HC} \begin{array}{c} CH = CH \\ \parallel \\ CH = CH \end{array}$$

In addition to the above type of *cyclic* polymerisation, acetylene undergoes *linear* polymerisation when passed into a solution of cuprous chloride in ammonium chloride to give vinylacetylene and divinylacetylene:

$$\text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{CH} = \text{CH} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} - \text{C} = \text{CH} \xrightarrow{c_2 \text{H}_2} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} - \text{C} = \text{C} - \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2$$

Compounds containing both a double and triple bond are named systematically as *alkenynes*. The double bond is always expressed first in the name, and numbers as low as possible are given to the double and triple bonds, even though this may give "yne" the lower number. Thus vinylacetylene is but-1-en-3-yne, and divinylacetylene is hexa-1:5-dien-3-yne. The following compound, CH₃·CH=CH-C=CH, however, is pent-3-en-1-yne.

Vinylacetylene adds on one molecule of hydrogen chloride to the triple bond to form *chloroprene* or 2-chlorobuta-1: 3-diene, the addition taking place in accordance with Markownikoff's rule:

$$CH_2 = CH - C = CH + HCl \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH - CCl = CH_2$$

Chloroprene readily polymerises to a rubber-like substance known as *neoprene*.

9. Acetylene forms metallic derivatives by replacement of one or both hydrogen atoms, *e.g.*, if acetylene is passed over heated sodium, both the monosodium and disodium acetylides are formed:

$$CH = CH \xrightarrow{Na} CH = CNa \xrightarrow{Na} NaC = CNa$$

By using a large excess of acetylene the main product is monosodium acetylide, which is also obtained by passing acetylene into a solution of sodium in liquid ammonia until the blue colour disappears. By treatment of a fine dispersion of sodium in xylene at $100-105^{\circ}$ with acetylene, sodium acetylide can be obtained in 98 per cent. yield (Rutledge, 1957). The monosodium derivative possesses the interesting property of being able to absorb dry carbon dioxide to form the sodium salt of propiolic acid (q.v.):

$$CH \equiv C \cdot Na + CO_2 \longrightarrow CH \equiv C \cdot CO_2Na$$

The alkali metal acetylides react with carbonyl compounds to form acetylenic alcohols:

$$>$$
CO + NaC \equiv CR \longrightarrow $>$ C(OH)·C \equiv CR

Acetylene also forms Grignard reagents by reaction with alkylmagnesium

halides (p. 351).

When acetylene is passed into an ammoniacal solution of cuprous chloride or silver nitrate, cuprous acetylide $\operatorname{Cu_2C_2}$ (red) or silver acetylide $\operatorname{Ag_2C_2}$ (white) is precipitated. Both these compounds, when dry, explode when struck or heated. When they are treated with potassium cyanide solution pure acetylene is obtained, but on treatment with inorganic acid, the acetylene liberated is impure.

The acidic nature of hydrogen in acetylene is characteristic of hydrogen in the group \equiv CH, and it has been suggested that this is because the C—H bond has considerable ionic character due to resonance.

$$H-C\equiv C-H \longleftrightarrow H-C\equiv CH \longleftrightarrow HC\equiv C-H \longleftrightarrow HC\equiv CH$$

There is, however, evidence to show that the electronegativity of a carbon atom depends on the number of bonds by which it is joined to its neighbouring carbon atom (Walsh, 1947). Since π-electrons are more weakly bound than σ-electrons, the electron density round a carbon atom with π -bonds is less than that when only σ -bonds are present. Thus, a carbon atom having one π -bond has a slight positive charge compared with a carbon atom which has only σ-bonds. the electronegativity of an sp^2 hybridised carbon atom is greater than that of an sp^3 hybridised carbon atom. Similarly, a carbon atom which has two π -bonds carries a small positive charge which is greater than that carried by a carbon atom with only one π -bond. Thus the electronegativity of an sp hybridised carbon atom is greater than that of an sp^2 hybridised carbon atom. It therefore follows that the more s character a bond has, the more electronegative is that carbon atom. Thus the attraction for electrons by hybridised carbon will be $sp>sp^2>sp^3$. Therefore the ionic character of a C—H bond depends on the state of hybridisation of the carbon atom and is greatest for sp hybridisation and least for sp³ hybridisation. Hence, in acetylene, the hydrogen atoms have a large amount of ionic character (relative to ethylene and methane) and consequently are more readily released as protons (than hydrogen in ethylene and methane).

This interpretation of change in electronegativity with change in hybridisation has a very important bearing on the problem of hyperconjugation (p. 271).

The structure of metallic carbides, *i.e.*, compounds formed between carbon and metals, is still a matter of dispute. It appears certain, so far, that the carbides of the strongly electropositive metals: Na, K, Ca, Sr, Ba, are ionic—X-ray crystal analysis has shown the lattice of these carbides to be ionic, containing the

ion C=C. These carbides react with water to produce acetylene. Copper and silver carbides are not affected by water, and are explosive when dry. On account of these differences it seems likely that the carbides of these two metals are covalent, e.g., Cu—C=C—Cu. Thus these compounds may be regarded as acetylides.

In addition to the above carbides, there are a number of carbides which react with water or dilute acids to produce methane, e.g., aluminium carbide; or a mixture of hydrocarbons, e.g., uranium carbide which gives acetylene and other unsaturated hydrocarbons; iron carbide which gives methane and hydrogen. Many authors believe these carbides to be ionic, and include carbides of copper and silver in this group.

There is also one other group of carbides which are highly refractory, and which are extremely stable chemically; e.g., vanadium carbide is not attacked by water or hydrochloric acid even at 600°. These carbides are believed to be interstitial compounds, i.e., their lattice is not composed of ions, but resembles a

metallic or atomic lattice.

Structure of acetylene. By reasoning similar to that used for ethylene, the structure of acetylene is shown to be H—C=C—H, and may be repre-



sented as Fig. 2(a). This representation, however, appears to be inadequate. According to Coulson (1952), the two π -bonds form a charge cloud which has cylindrical symmetry about the carbon-carbon axis (Fig. 2b).

HOMOLOGUES OF ACETYLENE

Homologues of acetylene may be prepared by any of the following methods:

1. By the action of ethanolic potassium hydroxide on vic- or gem-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins (cf. preparation of acetylene, method 2), e.g., methylacetylene from propylene bromide:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHBr-}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} + 2\text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} = \text{CH} + 2\text{KBr} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Since gem-dihalides are not usually readily accessible, and the vic-dihalides are, the latter are used.

This method affords a simple means of introducing a triple bond into an organic compound, e.g., n-butanol is catalytically dehydrated to but-1-ene, which on treatment with bromine gives 1:2-dibromobutane, and this, when heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, yields but-1-yne:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_3\text{O}_2} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_3} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{C} = \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH$$

2. Monosodium acetylide (see reaction 9 of acetylene) is treated with an alkyl halide, preferably a bromide, whereupon an acetylene homologue is produced:

This reaction may be carried further as follows:

$$R \cdot C = CH + Na \xrightarrow{liquid} R \cdot C = CNa \xrightarrow{R'X} R \cdot C = C \cdot R' + NaX$$

In practice this method is limited to the use of primary alkyl halides, since higher sec. and tert. halides give mainly olefins when they react with the monosodium derivatives of acetylene or its homologues.

3. By the action of acetylene on a Grignard reagent (q.v.) and then treating the resulting magnesium complex with an alkyl halide:

$$CH = CH + R - Mg - Br \longrightarrow RH + CH = C - Mg - Br \xrightarrow{RBr} CH = C \cdot R$$

The properties of the homologues of acetylene are very similar to those of acetylene, particularly when they are of the type R·C=CH, i.e., contain the =CH group. A very interesting reaction of the acetylene homologues is their ability to isomerise when heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, the triple bond moving towards the centre of the chain, e.g., but-1-yne isomerises to but-2-vne:

$$\operatorname{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}C} = \operatorname{CH} \longrightarrow [\operatorname{CH_3\text{-}CH} = \operatorname{C} = \operatorname{CH_2}] \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_3\text{-}C} = \operatorname{C} \cdot \operatorname{CH_3}$$

There is a great deal of evidence to show that an allene is formed as an intermediate.

On the other hand, when alkynes are heated with sodamide in an inert solvent, e.g., paraffin, the triple bond moves towards the end of the chain; e.g., but-2-yne gives the sodium derivative of but-1-yne, which is converted into but-1-yne by the action of water:

but-1-yne by the action of water:
$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{NaNH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{paraffin}} \\ \text{NH}_3 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CNa} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3 \text{O}} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH}$$

This reaction affords a means of stepping up the alkyne series by method 2 above. A very useful acetylene derivative for synthetic work is ethoxyacetylene. This may conveniently be prepared by the action of sodamide on chloroacetaldehyde diethyl acetal (Jones et al., 1954):

$$\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_2} \text{CH} \Longrightarrow \text{C} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$$

Lithium derivatives of monosubstituted acetylenes can be prepared by interaction of the acetylene and lithium amide in dioxan (Schlubach et al., 1958).

QUESTIONS

- I. Write out the structures of the isomeric pentenes and name them (use three methods of nomenclature).
 - 2. Give an account of the evidence for the structure of propylene.
- 3. Give as many methods as you can for separating a mixture of isobutane and but-1-ene into its constituents.
- 4. Show how you would distinguish experimentally between the three isomeric butylenes.
- 5. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed
- 5. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed when but-1-ene is treated with:—(a) bromine, (b) hydrogen bromide, (c) hydrogen chloride, (d) hypochlorous acid, (e) ozone, (f) conc. sulphuric acid, (g) hydrogen, (h) chlorine, (i) nitrosyl chloride, (j) peracetic acid, (k) heat.

 6. Define and give examples of:—(a) unsaturation, (b) dehydration, (c) dehydrohalogenation, (d) conjugation, (e) 1: 4-addition, (f) polymerisation, (g) hydroxylation of a double bond, (h) peroxide effect, (i) ozonolysis, (j) Prileschaiev's reaction, (k) polycondensation, (l) plastics, (m) thermoplastic, (n) thermo-setting plastic, (o) plasticiser, (p) ethinylation, (q) vinylation, (r) Wittig reaction, (s) hydroboronation.

 7. Write out the structures and names (by two methods) of the isomeric pentynes.

 8. Give an analytical table to show how you would distinguish between ethane, ethylene and acetylene.
- ethylene and acetylene.
- 9. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed when acetylene reacts with the reagents named in question 5.
- 10. Prepare methylpropylacetylene using only acetylene and methyl iodide and any inorganic compounds you wish.
- 11. Give an account of the evidence for the structure of acetylene.
- 12. Discuss the structures of butadiene and acetylene from the M.O. point of view.

READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.).

Vol I. (a) Ch. 1. The Reactions of the Aliphatic Hydrocarbons.

(b) Ch. 7. Unsaturation and Conjugation. (c) Ch. 8. Synthetic Polymers.

Mayo and Walling, The Peroxide Effect, Chem. Reviews, 1940, 27, 357. Riebsomer, Reactions of Nitrogen Tetroxide with Organic Compounds, ibid., 1945,

36, 197-211. Levy, Scaife et al., Addition of Dinitrogen Tetroxide to Olefins, J.C.S., 1946, 1093,

1096, 1100; 1948, 52.
Gorin, Kuhn, and Miles, Mechanisms of the Catalysed Alkylation of isoButane with Olefins, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1946, 38, 745. Groll and Hearne, Substitution in Straight-Chain Olefins, ibid., 1939, 31, 1530.

Bailey, The Reactions of Ozone with Organic Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1958, 58, 925. Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. II (1944), Ch. 8. Periodic Acid Oxidation. ibid., 1945, 42, 143–145. Oxidation with Lead Tetra-acetate.

ibid., 1945, 42, 143-145. Oxidation with Lead Tetra-acetate. De la Mare, Kinetics of Thermal Addition of Halogens to Olefinic Compounds, Quart.

Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1949, 3, 126.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. V (1949), Ch. I. The Synthesis of Acetylenes.

Raphael, Acetylenic Compounds in Organic Synthesis, Butterworth (1955).

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. VII (1953), Ch. 7. Epoxidation and Hydroxylation of Ethylenic Compounds with Organic Per-acids.

Lynch and Pausacker, The Oxidation of Olefins with Perbenzoic Acids. A Kinetic

Study, J.C.S., 1955, 1525.
Trapnell, Specificity in Catalysis by Metals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1954, 8, 404. Bond, The Mechanism of Catalytic Hydrogenation and Related Reactions, ibid., 1954, 8, 279.

Cadogan and Hey, Free-Radical Addition Reactions to Olefinic Systems, ibid., 1954, 8, 308.

Bu'Lock, Acetylenic Compounds as Natural Products, ibid., 1956, 10, 371.

Kharasch, The Unique Properties of 2: 4-Dinitrobenzenesulphenyl Chloride, J. Chem. Educ., 1956, 33, 585.

Langford and Lawson, Characterisation of Organic Compounds with 2:4-Dinitrobenzenesulphenyl Chloride, *ibid.*, 1957, 34, 510.

Crawford, Infrared Spectra of Adsorbed Gases, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1960, 14, 378.

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Interscience, Vol. I (1960). Trippett, The Wittig Reaction, p. 83. Gunstone, Hydroxylation Methods, p. 103.

Bradley and Ledwith, The Reaction of Carbene with Alkyl Halides, J.C.S., 1961, 1495.

CHAPTER V

HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE PARAFFINS

HALOGEN derivatives of the paraffins are divided into mono-, di-, tri-, etc., substitution products according to the number of halogen atoms in the molecule.

Nomenclature. Monohalogen derivatives are usually named as the halide of the corresponding alkyl group, e.g., C_2H_5Cl ethyl chloride; $CH_3\cdot CHBr\cdot CH_3$

isopropyl bromide; (CH₃)₃CCl tert.-butyl chloride.

Dihalogen derivatives. (i) When both halogen atoms are attached to the same carbon atom, they are said to be in the geminal (gem-) position. Since the loss of two hydrogen atoms from the same carbon atom gives the alkylidene radical, gem-dihalides are named as the alkylidene halides, e.g., CH₃·CHBr₂ ethylidene bromide; CH₃·CCl₂·CH₃ isopropylidene chloride.

(ii) When the two halogen atoms are on adjacent carbon atoms they are said to be in the vicinal (vic-) position, and these dihalides are named as the halide of the olefin from which they may be prepared by the addition of halogen, e.g., CH₂Cl·CH₂Cl ethylene chloride; (CH₃)₂CBr·CH₂Br isobutylene bromide.

(iii) When there is a halogen atom on each of the *terminal* carbon atoms of the chain, *i.e.*, in the αω-position, the compound is named as the polymethylene halide, *e.g.*, CH₂Cl-CH₂·CH₂·CH₂Cl tetramethylene chloride.

(iv) When the two halogen atoms occupy positions other than those mentioned above, the compounds are named as dihalogen derivatives of the parent hydrocarbon, the positions of the halogen atoms being indicated by numbers (use principle of lowest numbers), e.g.,

$$CH_3$$
· $CHCl$ · CH_2 · $CHCl$ · CH_2 · CH_3 2: 4-dichlorohexane

The alkyl halides, gem-, vic- and $\alpha\omega$ -dihalides may also be named by this (I.U.P.A.C.) system, e.g., CH_3 - CH_2 - CH_3 - $CH_$

Polyhalogen derivatives are best named by the I.U.P.A.C. system (method iv), and the names of the halogens (and any other substituents present) are

arranged alphabetically:

 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{CH}_2\text{Br}\text{-}\text{CHCl}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 & \text{i-bromo-2}: 3\text{-dichlorobutane} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CHI}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} & \text{5-bromo-i-chloro-2-iodo-3-methylpentane} \end{array}$

ALKYL HALIDES

The alkyl halides have the general formula $C_nH_{2n+1}X$ or RX, where X denotes chlorine, bromine or iodine. Fluorine is not included, since fluorides were, until fairly recently, chemical curiosities, and also do not behave like the other halides. Fluorine compounds are discussed separately at the end of this chapter.

General methods of preparation. I. The method most widely used is to replace the hydroxyl group of an alcohol by an X atom. This may be done by means of various halogen reagents, and the accessibility of the reagent is usually the factor deciding which one is used for the preparation

of a particular alkyl halide.

(i) Alkyl chlorides may be prepared by passing hydrogen chloride into the alcohol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride (Groves' process), e.g., ethyl chloride from ethanol:

$$C_2H_5OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_4} C_2H_5Cl + H_2O$$

The yield of alkyl chloride depends on the nature of the alcohol. Primary alcohols of the type R·CH₂·CH₂OH and R₂CH·CH₂OH usually give good yields of alkyl chloride, but when the alcohol is of the type R₃C·CH₂OH, the main product is a tertiary alkyl chloride formed by rearrangement of the molecule (see neopentyl alcohol, below). Secondary alcohols, except for isopropanol and sec.-butanol, react with hydrogen chloride to give mixtures of chlorides, e.g., pentan-2-ol gives a mixture of 2- and 3-chlorides. Secondary alcohols containing highly branched radicals attached to the carbinol group tend to give tertiary chlorides by molecular rearrangement, e.g., pinacolyl alcohol:

$$(CH_3)_3C \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HCl} (CH_3)_2CCl \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$$

Tertiary alcohols give very good yields of tertiary chloride with concentrated hydrochloric acid in the absence of zinc chloride.

The reaction between an alcohol and hydrogen chloride is reversible, and it is believed that the zinc chloride functions as a dehydrating agent, thus inhibiting the backward reaction.

The formation of the various halides by rearrangement is one example of class of rearrangements often referred to as **1,2-shifts**. In this type of rearrangement a group migrates from a carbon atom (the migration origin) to an adjacent atom (the migration terminus), which is usually carbon or nitrogen. The rearrangement may be expressed in the following general form:

When Y ionises, B is left with only six valency electrons (open sextet), and consequently carries a positive charge. Z migrates with its bonding pair of electrons, and A now has an open sextet. Attack now takes place at A by Y or some other nucleophilic reagent to form the products. This mechanism was first suggested by Whitmore (1932) and is often referred to as the Whitmore mechanism.

The nature of Z is quite varied; the "key" atom (i.e., the atom joined to the bonding pair which migrates) may be carbon, halogen, oxygen, etc. If Z has a lone pair of electrons, e.g., halogen, then this pair may be used in the migration to give a cyclic intermediate, i.e., a bridged ion.

$$\begin{array}{c} Z \\ \downarrow \\ A-B^+ \longrightarrow A-B \longrightarrow \text{products} \end{array}$$

If Z is an aryl group, then this group can supply an electron pair to form a bridged ion (see, e.g., p. 172). If Z is an alkyl group, then there are no lone pairs or multiple bonds, but again it is believed that a bridged ion is possible, i.e.,

This type of bridged ion contains three partial bonds formed from one pair of electrons. This idea of bridged carbonium ions was first suggested by Nevell et al. (1939), but it must be admitted that the existence of such an ion has not yet been definitely established when the migrating group is an

alkyl group. The formation of these bridged ions in the 1,2-shifts is an example of neighbouring group participation, and when the rate of the rearrangement is increased because of this effect, the rearrangement is said to be anchimerically assisted (Winstein et al., 1953; see also p. 415).

A very important point about 1,2-shifts is that they are intramolecular, i.e., Z is never actually free. If the mechanism were such that Z was free during its migration, then the rearrangement would be called intermolecular. The intramolecular nature of the 1,2-shifts has been established by using a group Z which contains an asymmetric carbon atom attached to A, i.e., have type abcC—A. If Z actually separated during the migration, then it means that the free migrating unit is a carbanion, i.e., abcC:— Examination of such carbanions has shown that none ever retains its configuration; it racemises, i.e., half the molecules have their configuration inverted, and so the product is no longer optically active (the student should read pp. 413–416 before proceeding further). Thus if Z moves with its bonding pair and the configuration is retained in the product, then Z can never have been free, i.e., the rearrangement is intramolecular.

We can now illustrate the foregoing discussion with neopentyl alcohol as our example. Whitmore et al. (1932) showed that the reactions undergone by neopentyl alcohol and neopentyl halides are of two types: (i) replacement reactions, which occur very slowly (if at all) and produce neopentyl compounds; (ii) replacement (and elimination) reactions, which occur very fast

and produce t-amyl compounds.

Hughes and Ingold (1946) have shown that the slow reactions take place by the $S_{\rm N}2$ mechanism (p. 106) and consequently without rearrangement, e.g., neopentyl bromide reacts with ethanolic sodium ethoxide to give ethyl neopentyl ether:

On the other hand, when *neo*pentyl alcohol reacts with hydrobromic acid, the reaction is fast, proceeds by the $S_N r$ mechanism (p. 106), and produces *t*-amyl bromide by rearrangement (a 1,2-shift):

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Me_3C \cdot CH_2OH} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{HBr}} \operatorname{Me_3C \cdot CH_2} \xrightarrow{O} \operatorname{H_2^+} \Longrightarrow \\ \operatorname{H_2O} + \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Me} \\ \operatorname{Me_2C - CH_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{Me_2C - CH_2Me} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Br}^-} \operatorname{Me_2CBr \cdot CH_2Me} \end{array}$$

There is no definite evidence that the intermediate is a bridged ion rather than the classical carbonium ion.

A point of interest here is that the "driving force" of the rearrangement is probably due to the stabilities of carbonium ions being tertiary > secondary > primary due to the delocalisation of the charge by the inductive effect of the alkyl groups increasing with the number of alkyl groups attached to the positively charged carbon atom (in the classical carbonium ion; cf. p. 33):

Alkyl bromides may be prepared:

(a) By refluxing the alcohol with excess constant-boiling hydrobromic acid (48 per cent.) in the presence of a little sulphuric acid, which must behave catalytically, since in its absence the reaction is slow.

The yield of alkyl bromide is usually excellent; when a secondary or tertiary alcohol is used, it is better to omit the sulphuric acid, since this would dehydrate these alcohols to olefins and thereby reduce the yield.

(b) By heating the alcohol with potassium bromide and concentrated

sulphuric acid in excess:

$$ROH + KBr + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow RBr + KHSO_4 + H_2O$$

The yield is very good for primary alcohols only; secondary and tertiary

are readily dehydrated to olefins under these conditions.

Alkyl iodides may be prepared in good yield by refluxing the alcohol with excess of constant-boiling hydriodic acid (57 per cent.). Stone *et al.* (1950) have shown that alkyl iodides may be prepared in good yields by heating alcohols, ethers or olefins with sodium or potassium iodide in 95 per cent. phosphoric acid.

(ii) Any alkyl halide may be prepared by the action of a phosphorus halide on the alcohol. Phosphorus pentachloride gives variable yields

depending on the alcohol:

$$ROH + PCl_5 \longrightarrow RCl + HCl + POCl_3$$

Phosphorus trichloride gives poor yields of alkyl chloride except with alcohols which tend to react by an S_NI mechanism, e.g., tert.-alcohols behave in accordance with the equation:

$$PCl_3 + 3ROH \longrightarrow 3RCl + P(OH)_3$$

The yields of alkyl halide with phosphorus tribromide or tri-iodide are v.g.-ex. for primary alcohols; less for secondary alcohols, and still less for tertiary. These phosphorus trihalides are usually prepared *in situ*; bromine or iodine is added to a mixture of red phosphorus and alcohol, and warmed.

(iii) Thionyl chloride (one molecule) refluxed with alcohols (one molecule) forms alkyl chlorides in the presence of pyridine (one molecule) [Darzens

procedure] (see also p. 415):

$$ROH + SOCl_2 \xrightarrow{pyridine} RCl + SO_2 + HCl$$

In a number of cases only a small amount of pyridine need be used to give the same yield of alkyl chloride as in the Darzens procedure.

2. By the addition of halogen acids to an olefin.

3. By direct halogenation, i.e., substitution reactions of the paraffins with halogen, and this may be brought about by (a) light, (b) catalysts

or (c) heat.

(a) Photohalogenation is carried out by treating the paraffin with chlorine or bromine at ordinary temperature in the presence of light. The reaction is believed to take place by a free-radical chain mechanism, the initiation being brought about by the formation of chlorine atoms by the U.V. part of the spectrum of the light:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{hv}} 2\operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{CH}_4 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{CH}_3 \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_3 \cdot + \operatorname{Cl}_2 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_3\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{CH}_3\operatorname{Cl} & \longrightarrow \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{Cl}_2 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl}_2 + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \operatorname{etc.} \end{array}$$

The termination of the chain reaction may take place by adsorption of the chlorine atoms on the walls of the containing vessel, or by two chlorine atoms combining with each other to form a chlorine molecule. There appears to be no evidence to show that $\mathrm{CH_3}$, $\cdot\mathrm{CH_2Cl}$, etc., radicals combine to terminate the chain reaction (cf. addition of chlorine to ethylene, p. 66). Ritchie and Winning (1950) suggest that the chain-ending involves the formation of $\mathrm{Cl_3}$ molecules:

$$Cl^{\bullet} + Cl_{2} \longrightarrow Cl_{3}^{\bullet}; \ 2Cl_{3}^{\bullet} \longrightarrow 3Cl_{2}^{\bullet}$$

(b) Catalytic halogenation is carried out by treating the paraffin with halogen in the presence of various metallic halides, e.g., cupric chloride catalyses chlorination; ferric bromide, bromination.

(c) Thermal halogenation. Thermal chlorination has been studied in great detail by Hass, McBee and their co-workers (1935 onwards), and as a result of their work they suggested a number of rules for chlorination:

(i) If high temperature is avoided, no carbon skeleton rearrangements occur in either thermal or photochemical chlorination.

(ii) Every possible monochloride is formed, and over-chlorination, *i.e.*, chlorination beyond monosubstitution, may be suppressed by controlling the ratio of chlorine to paraffin (this rule also holds good for photochemical chlorination).

(iii) The order of ease of substitution is tertiary hydrogen>secondary>primary. At 300°, with reaction in the vapour phase, the relative rates of substitution of primary, secondary and tertiary hydrogen atoms are 1.00:3.25:4.43.

(iv) As the temperature rises above 300° the relative rates of substitution tend to become equal, i.e., 1:1:1. Increased pressure causes an increase in the

relative rate of primary substitution.

(v) In vapour-phase chlorination the presence of a chlorine atom on a carbon atom tends to prevent further reaction on that carbon atom during the second substitution. According to Tedder *et al.* (1960), this generalisation is a poor approximation to the truth. These authors have shown the effect of the halogen atom already present in the molecule is to retard substitution at a β -carbon atom, and also affects substitution at an α -carbon atom.

In the past it was believed that paraffins always tended to complete substitution. Rule (ii) shows this is not the case. Methane, however, has been found to be an exception; chlorination of methane always results in a mixture of all four substitution products, their relative amounts depending on the ratio of chlorine to methane (see, e.g., methyl chloride).

Bromination takes place with greater difficulty than chlorination, and

there is less tendency for polysubstitution.

The mechanism of thermal halogenation is believed to take place by a freeradical chain reaction (cf. photohalogenation). The initiation of the chain reaction is brought about by the thermal dissociation of chlorine molecules into separate atoms:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{Cl}^{\centerdot} + \text{Cl}^{\centerdot} \\ \text{Cl}^{\centerdot} + \text{CH}_4 \longrightarrow \text{HCl} + \text{CH}_3^{\centerdot}, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

4. Direct chlorination of paraffins may be effected by means of sulphuryl chloride. Sulphuryl chloride in the absence of light and catalysts does not react with paraffins even at their boiling points, but in the presence of light and a trace of an organic peroxide the reaction is fast:

$$RH + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow RCl + SO_2 + HCl$$

The mechanism of this reaction is still obscure, but in view of the fact that it is catalysed by organic peroxides (which are known to generate free radicals), it is quite likely that chlorination with sulphuryl chloride proceeds by a free-radical chain reaction.

In general, the products obtained by chlorination with sulphuryl chloride are the same as those obtained by photochemical or thermal chlorination, and it has been found that when sulphuryl chloride is used:

(i) The order of ease of replacement of a hydrogen atom is tertiary> secondary> primary.

(ii) The second chlorine atom tends to substitute on that carbon atom which is as far away as possible from the carbon atom already joined to the chlorine atom.

(iii) It is difficult to get two, and impossible to get three, chlorine atoms on the same carbon atom.

Alkyl chlorides and bromides are generally obtained fairly easily, iodides not so easily. Fluorides have to be prepared by special means (see later in this chapter). In many cases the iodide may be obtained from the corresponding chloride or bromide by treating the latter in acetone or methanol solution with sodium iodide (see p. 54):

$$RCl + NaI \longrightarrow RI + NaCl$$

Iodides may also be prepared from the corresponding bromide via the Grignard reagent:

$$RBr + Mg \xrightarrow{ether} R - Mg - Br \xrightarrow{I_1} RI$$

5. Hunsdiecker et al. (1935) found that various salts of the fatty acids are decomposed by chlorine or bromine to form the alkyl halide, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2Ag + Br_2 \longrightarrow RBr + CO_2 + AgBr$$

The silver salt appears to give the best yield, but the yield also depends on the solvent used; Stoll et al. (1951) found that trichloroethylene is a better solvent than either carbon tetrachloride or carbon disulphide. The yield of halide is primary>secondary>tertiary, and bromine is generally used, chlorine giving a poorer yield of alkyl chloride, and iodine tending to form esters.

$$2R \cdot CO_2Ag + I_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R + CO_2 + 2AgI$$

Apart from preparing alkyl halides, this reaction also offers a means of stepping down the fatty acids and alcohols.

The reaction considered above is often referred to as the Hunsdiecker

reaction or the Borodine-Hunsdiecker reaction.

6. Rydon et al. (1954) have shown that alkyl halides may be prepared, in good yield, by the addition of halogen to a mixture of an alcohol and triphenyl phosphite:

$$(C_6H_5O)_3P + ROH + X_2 \longrightarrow RX + XPO(OC_6H_5)_2 + C_6H_5OH$$

General properties of the alkyl halides. The lower members methyl chloride, methyl bromide and ethyl chloride are gases; methyl iodide and the majority of the higher members are sweet-smelling liquids. The order of the values of the boiling points (and densities) of the alkyl halides is iodide>bromide>chloride>fluoride. In a group of isomeric alkyl halides, the order of the boiling points is primary>secondary>tertiary. Many of the alkyl halides burn with a green-edged flame. The chemical reactions of the alkyl halides are similar, but they are not equally reactive, the order of reactivity being iodide>bromide>chloride; the reactivity of alkyl fluorides depends on the nature of the fluoride (p. 122). Alkyl iodides are sufficiently reactive to be decomposed by light, the iodide darkening due to the liberation of iodine:

$$2RI \longrightarrow R-R+I_2$$

Alkyl halides (and the polyhalides) are covalent compounds, insoluble in water, with which they cannot form a hydrogen bond, but soluble in organic solvents.

The alkyl halides are classified as primary, secondary and tertiary, according as the halogen atom is present in the respective groups $-CH_2X$, -CHX and $\equiv CX$, *i.e.*, according as the halogen atom is joined to a primary,

secondary or tertiary carbon atom.

It has already been pointed out that alkyl groups have a +I effect. Before considering the reactions of the alkyl halides, it is important to explain why an alkyl group is electron-repelling. Several explanations have been offered; the following is a highly favoured one. As we have seen, methane and ethane are non-polar (p. 54). Thus the methyl group has a zero inductive effect; and this is true for all alkyl groups since all paraffins, whether straight- or branched-chain, have a zero dipole moment. When, however, one hydrogen atom in a paraffin is replaced by some polar atom (or group), the alkyl group now exerts a polar effect which is produced by the presence of the polar atom. Thus, in an alkyl halide, the alkyl group possesses an inductive effect, but it is one which is produced mainly by the mechanism of interaction polarisation (cf. p. 20). It therefore follows that the alkyl group is more polarisable than a hydrogen atom, and since most of the groups attached to the alkyl group are electron-attracting groups, the alkyl group thus usually becomes an electron-repelling group, i.e., alkyl groups normally have a +I effect.

General reactions of the alkyl halides. The alkyl halides are extremely important reagents because they undergo a large variety of reactions that

make them valuable in organic syntheses.

1. Alkyl halides are hydrolysed to alcohols very slowly by water, but rapidly by silver oxide suspended in boiling water, or by boiling aqueous alkalis (see also 5):

$$RX + KOH \longrightarrow ROH + KX$$

This type of reaction is an example of nucleophilic substitution (S_N) since the attacking reagent is a nucleophilic reagent (p. 33). It has been assumed that this type of heterolytic reaction in solution can take place by two different mechanisms, unimolecular or bimolecular.

Unimolecular mechanism. This is a two-stage process, the first stage consisting of slow heterolysis of the compound to form a carbonium ion, followed by rapid combination between the carbonium ion and the substituting nucleophilic reagent. Since the rate-determining step is the first one, and since in this step only one molecule is undergoing a covalency change, this type of mechanism is called unimolecular, and is labelled S_NI (Ingold et al., 1928, 1933). Thus, if the hydrolysis of an alkyl halide is an S_NI reaction, it may be written:

$$R \xrightarrow{\frown X} \xrightarrow{slow} X^- + R^+ \xrightarrow{OH^-} ROH$$

Bimolecular mechanism. This is a one-stage process, two molecules simultaneously undergoing covalency change in the rate-determining step. This type of mechanism is called bimolecular, and is labelled $S_N 2$. Since the rate-determining step in this reaction is the formation of the transition state, the hydrolysis of an alkyl halide by an $S_N 2$ reaction may be written:

$$\overline{HO}^{\sim}$$
 R-X \longrightarrow \overline{HO} -R-X \longrightarrow HO-R + X-

Any factor that affects the energy of activation of a given type of reaction will affect the rate and/or the mechanism. Attempts have been made to

calculate E in terms of bond strengths, steric factor, heats of solution of ions, etc., but apparently the results are conflicting. The following discussion is therefore largely qualitative, and because of this, one cannot be sure which are the predominant factors in deciding the value of the energy

The main difference between the two mechanisms is the kinetic order of the reaction. S_N2 reactions would be expected to be second order, whereas S_NI reactions would be expected to be first order. These orders are only true under certain circumstances, e.g., in a bimolecular reaction, the order is second-order if both reactants are present in small and controllable concentrations. If, however, one of the reactants is the solvent, this will be in constant excess, and so such a bimolecular mechanism will lead to firstorder kinetics.

Another important difference is that in the S_N2 mechanism, the molecule is always inverted. In the S_N1 mechanism, the configuration of the resulting molecule depends on various factors (see p. 415).

Let us first consider the nature of R. There are two effects to be con-

sidered, the polar factor and the steric factor.

Polar factor. Consider the series of ethyl, isopropyl, and t-butyl halides. Since the methyl group has a +I effect, the larger the number of methyl groups on the carbon atom of the C—X, the greater will be the electron density on this carbon. If we use one arrow-head to represent (qualitatively) the electron-repelling effect of a methyl group, then we have the following state of affairs:

$$Me \rightarrow CH_2 \rightarrow X \qquad Me \rightarrow CH \rightarrow -X \qquad Me \rightarrow C \rightarrow X$$

$$Me \rightarrow CH \rightarrow X$$

$$Me \rightarrow CH \rightarrow X$$

This increasing electron density on the central carbon atom increasingly opposes attack at this carbon atom by a negatively charged nucleophilic reagent. Thus the formation of the transition state for the S_{N2} mechanism becomes increasingly difficult. It can therefore be anticipated that the S_N2 mechanism is made more difficult in passing from EtX to t-BuX. the other hand, since the S_NI mechanism involves ionisation as the first step, then it can be expected that as the electron density increases on the central carbon atom, the bonding pair in C-X becomes more and more displaced towards the X atom, and consequently ionisation of X as a negative ion will become easier. It therefore follows that the tendency for the S_NI mechanism should increase from EtX to t-BuX. These anticipated results have been realised in practice. Hughes, Ingold et al. (1935-1940) examined the hydrolysis of alkyl bromides in alkaline aqueous ethanol and showed that MeBr and EtBr undergo hydrolysis by the S_N2 mechanism, isoPrBr by both $S_N 2$ and $S_N 1$ mechanisms, and t-BuBr by the $S_N 1$ mechanism only. It has also been shown, however, that the actual position where the mechanism changes over from S_N2 to S_N1 in a given graded polar series (such as the one above) is not fixed but also depends on other factors such as the concentration of the nucleophilic reagent and the nature of the solvent (see below).

The steric effect was originally thought to be a spatial Steric effects. effect brought into play by mechanical interference between groups, and was described as steric hindrance (see p. 686). The term steric hindrance considered the geometry of the reactant molecule. When, however, a molecule undergoes chemical reaction, it does so via a transition state. Consequently the geometry of both the initial and transition state must be taken into consideration. Thus steric factors may affect the speed and/or the mechanism of a reaction. It is, however, often very difficult to distinguish between steric and polar factors. Nevertheless, the effects of the steric factor can often be assessed in some sort of qualitative manner. When steric effects slow down a reaction, that reaction is said to be subject to steric hindrance (or retardation), and when they speed up a reaction, that reaction is said to be subject to steric acceleration.

When there is repulsion between non-bonded atoms in a molecule due to their close proximity, forces of steric repulsion are said to be acting. When the stability of a molecule is decreased by internal forces produced by interaction between the constituent parts, that molecule is said to be under steric strain. There are three sources of steric strain: (i) repulsion between non-bonded atoms (steric repulsion); (ii) distortion of bond angles (angle strain); (iii) dipole interactions.

In an S_{N2} reaction there will be five groups "attached" to the carbon atom at which reaction occurs (p. 414). Thus there will be "crowding" in the transition state, and the bulkier the groups, the greater will be the compression energy, and consequently the reaction will be hindered sterically.

Let us consider the following example. Hughes *et al.* (1946) examined the rate of exchange of iodide ions in acetone solution with MeBr, EtBr, *iso*PrBr, and *t*-BuBr under conditions where only the S_N2 mechanism operated. The relative reactivities were found to be 10,000; 65; 0.50; 0.039.

$$\stackrel{-}{I} \stackrel{\wedge}{R} \stackrel{\wedge}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\delta-}{I} \stackrel{-}{\cdots} \stackrel{R}{\cdots} \stackrel{Br}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{-}{I} \stackrel{-}{\longrightarrow} I - R + Br$$

Thus increasing the number of methyl groups on the central carbon atom increases the steric retardation.

The problem is somewhat different for the $S_N I$ mechanism. Here the transition state does not contain more than four groups attached to the central carbon atom, and hence one would expect steric hindrance to be less important in the $S_N I$ mechanism. If, however, the molecule contains bulky groups, then by ionising, the molecule can relieve the steric strain, since the carbonium ion produced is flat (trigonal hybridisation) and so there is more room to accommodate the three alkyl groups. Thus, in such $S_N I$ reactions, there will be steric acceleration. Brown et al. (1949) showed that the solvolysis of tertiary halides is subject to steric acceleration (solvolysis is a nucleophilic substitution reaction in which the solvent is the nucleophilic reagent).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R_3C \xrightarrow{\qquad X} X \xrightarrow{\text{H}_1O} R_3C^+ + X^- \\ \text{(tetrahedral;} & \text{(trigonal; planar;} \\ \text{large strain)} & \text{small strain} \end{array}$$

These authors showed that as R increases in size, the rate of solvolysis increases. However, the larger the R groups are, the more slowly will the carbonium ion be expected to react with solvent molecules, since steric strain will be re-introduced into the molecule. In cases like this, the carbonium ion tends to undergo an elimination reaction to form an olefin (cf. ethylene), and Brown et al. (1950) have shown that this elimination process increases as the alkyl groups become larger (see p. 112).

It should be noted that a fundamental part of the $S_N I$ mechanism is the postulate of the transient existence of carbonium ions. Symons *et al.* (1959) have shown that monoaryl-carbonium ions are stable in dilute solutions of sulphuric acid. These authors have also concluded, from a spectroscopic examination of *t*-butanol in sulphuric acid, that there is the trimethylcarbonium ion, CMe_3^+ , in solution and that this ion is probably planar (*cf.* p. 366). It is interesting to note that of the ions Me^+ , $MeCH_2^+$, Me_2CH^+ , Me_3C^+ , the order of stability would be expected to increase from left to right, since the charge is

being increasingly neutralised by the +1 effect of the methyl groups. On the other hand, the triphenylmethyl carbonium ion, $(C_6H_8)_3C^+$, has been isolated as its perchlorate and borofluoride (Dauben *et al.*, 1960).

Now let us consider the effect of the nature of the halogen atom. Experimental work has shown that the nature of X has very little effect, if any, on *mechanism*, but it does affect the *rate* of reaction for a given mechanism, *e.g.*, it has been found that in $S_N I$ reactions, the rate follows the order RI > RBr > RCl. This may be explained by consideration of the C-X bond energy, the values of which are C-Cl, 77 k.cal.; C-Br, 65 k.cal.; C-I, 57 k.cal. Thus the C-I bond is most easily broken and the C-Cl bond least easily. These energy differences also explain the same order of increasing rate in $S_N 2$ reactions. As we have seen, the stronger the C-X bond, the greater will be the energy of activation.

The more pronounced the nucleophilic activity of the attacking reagent, *i.e.*, the greater the availability of its unshared pair, then the more the $S_N 2$ mechanism will be favoured, since in the $S_N 1$ mechanism the reagent does not enter into the rate-determining step of ionisation. However, it can also be expected that as the nucleophilic activity of the reagent decreases, a point will be reached where the nucleophilic activity is so low that the mechanism will change from $S_N 2$ to $S_N 1$. Hughes, Ingold, *et al.* (1935) examined the mechanism and rate of decomposition of various trimethyl-sulphonium salts ($Me_3S^+X^-$; see also p. 335) and showed that for X = OH, the mechanism is $S_N 2$, and for X = I, CI, or CI, or CI mechanism is CI and the rate decreases in this order.

Mechanism and rate of reaction are very much affected by the nature of the solvent. It has been found that the ionising power of a solvent depends on its dielectric constant and its power of solvation, and it appears that the latter is more important than the former. Solvation is due to the "attachment" between solvent and solute molecules, and one important contributing factor is attraction of a charge for a dipole. Since electrostatic work is done in the process of solvation, energy is lost by the system, and consequently the system is more stable.

Although the solute molecules have ionised, the oppositely charged pair of ions may become enclosed in a "cage" of the surrounding solvent molecules, and may therefore recombine before they can escape from the cage. Such a complex is known as an ion-pair, and their recombination is known as internal return. It has now been shown that many organic reactions proceed via ion-pairs rather than dissociated ions (see p. 273) Thus we have the possibility of the following steps:

$$RX \rightleftharpoons R^+X^- \rightleftharpoons R^+ + X^-$$
ion-pair dissociated ions

Many attempts have been made to correlate reaction rates and nature of the solvent. Hughes and Ingold (1935, 1948) proposed the following qualitative theory of solvent effects:

- (i) Ions and polar molecules, when dissolved in polar solvents, tend to become solvated.
- (ii) For a given solvent, solvation tends to increase with increasing magnitude of charge on the solute molecules or ions.
- (iii) For a given solute, solvation tends to increase with the increasing dipole moment of the solvent.
- (iv) For a given magnitude of charge, solvation decreases as the charge is spread over a larger volume.
- (v) The decrease of solvation due to the dispersal of charge will be less than that due to its destruction.

Since the rate-determining step in an $S_N I$ reaction is ionisation, any factor that assists this ionisation will therefore facilitate $S_N I$ reactions. Solvents with high dipole moments (i.e., high polarity) are usually good ionising media and, in general, it has been found that the more polar the solvent, the greater is the rate of the $S_N I$ reaction. Let us consider the following $S_N I$ reaction:

$$R-X \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \stackrel{\delta^+}{R} \stackrel{\delta^-}{X} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} R^+ + X^- \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} R - OH$$

Since the transition state has a larger charge than the reactant molecule, the former will be more solvated than the latter (rule ii). Thus the transition state is more stabilised than the reactant molecule, *i.e.*, the energy of activation is lowered, and so the reaction proceeds faster than had there been no (or less) solvation.

The rates of $\hat{S}_{N}2$ reactions are also affected by the polarity of the solvent:

$$\stackrel{\frown}{\text{HO}}$$
 $\stackrel{\frown}{\text{R-X}} \rightleftharpoons \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{HO}} \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{NO}} \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{NO}} \rightarrow \text{HO-R} + \text{X}^-$

A solvent with a high dipole moment will solvate both the reactant ion (nucleophilic reagent) and the transition state, but more so the former than the latter, since in the latter the charge, although unchanged in magnitude ($\delta^- = \mathrm{r/2}$), is more dispersed than in the former. Therefore solvation tends to stabilise the reactants more than the transition state (rule iv). Thus the activation energy is increased, and so the reaction is retarded.

The rate of the following S_N2 reaction is increased as the polarity of the

solvent increases.

$$R_3\overset{\delta^+}{\overset{\delta^-}{N}} \quad R-X \Longrightarrow R_3\overset{\delta^+}{\overset{N^-}{\overset{N^-}{N}}} \longrightarrow R_4N^+X^-$$

Here the charge on the transition state is greater than that on the reactants. Hence the transition state is more solvated than the reactants and con-

sequently stabilised, and so the activation energy is lowered.

The polarity of the solvent may change the mechanism of a reaction, e.g., Olivier (1934) showed that the alkaline hydrolysis of benzyl chloride in 50 per cent. aqueous acetone proceeds by both $S_N 2$ and $S_N 1$ mechanisms. When water was used as solvent, the mechanism was now mainly $S_N 1$. The dipole moment of water is greater than that of aqueous acetone, and so ionisation of the benzyl chloride is facilitated.

2. Alkyl halides are reduced by nascent hydrogen (Zn/Cu or Na and

ethanol, Sn and HCl, etc.) to form the corresponding paraffins:

$$RX + 2[H] \longrightarrow RH + HX$$

Lithium aluminium hydride also effects this reduction.

Alkyl iodides may be reduced by heating them with concentrated hydriodic acid and a small amount of red phosphorus at 150°.

$$RI + HI \longrightarrow RH + I_2$$

Since alcohols are readily converted into the corresponding halide, this offers a method of converting alcohols into paraffins with the same number of carbon atoms.

3. Alkyl halides undergo the Wurtz reaction to form paraffins (p. 51):

$$2RX + 2Na \longrightarrow R - R + 2NaX$$

On the other hand alkyl halides, when heated with certain metallic alloys, form organo-metallic compounds, e.g., ethyl chloride heated with a sodium lead alloy under pressure gives tetraethyl-lead:

$$4C_2H_5Cl + 4Na/Pb \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_4Pb + 4NaCl + 3Pb$$

4. When an alkyl halide is heated at about 300°, and at a lower temperature in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst, the alkyl halide undergoes rearrangement, e.g., 1-bromobutane rearranges to 2-bromobutane:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot$$

If there is no hydrogen atom on the carbon adjacent to the C—X group, an alkyl group migrates; *e.g.*, *neo*pentyl chloride rearranges to 2-chloro-2-methylbutane (see also p. 102):

$$(CH_3)_3C\cdot CH_2Cl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_9CCl\cdot CH_9\cdot CH_3$$

5. When alkyl halides are boiled with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, olefins are obtained, e.g., propyl bromide gives propylene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Br + KOH \xrightarrow{ethanol} CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + KBr + H_2O$$

According to Hughes and Ingold (1941), the elimination reaction between an alkyl halide and aqueous potassium hydroxide may take place by either a unimolecular (E1) or a bimolecular (E2) mechanism.

(i) E1:
$$H-CH_2-CH_2$$
 \xrightarrow{Slow} $H-CH_2-CH_2^+ + X^ HO^{-1}$ $H-CH_2$ $\xrightarrow{CH_2^+}$ CH_2^+ \xrightarrow{fast} $H_2O + CH_2=CH_2$
(ii) E2: HO^{-1} $H-CH_2$ $\xrightarrow{CH_2^+}$ CH_2 \xrightarrow{X} \longrightarrow $H_2O + CH_2=CH_2 + X^-$

On the other hand, in ethanolic potassium hydroxide, which contains potassium alkoxide RO^-K^+ , the reaction tends to take place by an E₂ (iii) or an $S_{\rm N}^2$ (iv) mechanism.

(iii)
$$\overrightarrow{RO^{-1}}$$
 $\overrightarrow{H-CH_2-CH_2-X} \longrightarrow \overrightarrow{ROH} + \overrightarrow{CH_2-CH_2} + \overrightarrow{X}$
(iv) $\overrightarrow{RO^{-1}}$ $\overrightarrow{CH_3}$ $\overrightarrow{CH_3}$ $\xrightarrow{CH_3}$ $\overrightarrow{RO-CH_2} + \overrightarrow{X}$

The course of the reaction depends on the nature of the alkyl halide and on the conditions used. Under the most favourable conditions for ethylene formation, ethyl halides give only I per cent. ethylene, the main products being replacement products. isoPropyl halide gives up to 80 per cent. propylene, and tertiary butyl halide Ioo per cent. isobutene if the reaction is carried out in ethanolic potassium hydroxide, which favours the bimolecular mechanisms (iii) and (iv).

When two olefins may be formed by dehydrohalogenation of an alkyl halide, the one that predominates is that which is the most substituted olefin, *i.e.*, the one carrying the largest number of alkyl substituents (Saytzeff's rule, 1875), e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3 \quad (I)$$

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (II)$$

(I) predominates (this is a *disubstituted* ethylene, whereas (II) is a *monosubstituted* ethylene).

Another way of stating Saytzeff's rule is that hydrogen is eliminated from that carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms. Ingold et al. (1941)

have offered the following explanation for this rule. If (I) and (II) are produced by an E2 mechanism, their formation may be written as follows:

(v)
$$HO^{-1}H \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} H \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} H_{2}O + CH \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH + Br^{-1}$$

$$CH_{3} \qquad CH_{2} \qquad CH_{3} \qquad (I)$$
(vi)
$$CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH \xrightarrow{Br} \rightarrow H_{2}O + CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} H \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} H$$

$$CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH \xrightarrow{Br} \rightarrow H_{2}O + CH_{3} \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} H$$

In the transition state of (v), the CH_3 group can enter into hyperconjugation with the partly formed double bond (p. 269), thereby lowering the energy of the transition state. In (vi), however, the CH_3 group cannot enter into hyperconjugation with the partly formed double bond, and so the energy of this transition state is higher than that of (v), and consequently the latter path is favoured.

On the basis that the hyperconjugative effect determines the stability of the olefin produced, it can be deduced that the ease of formation of olefin from an alkyl halide by the E2 mechanism should be t-R>s-R>p-R, e.g., t-Bu (2 Me groups)>isoPr (1 Me group)>Et (no Me groups):

Saytzeff's rule also applies when the mechanism is E1. In this mechanism the formation of the carbonium ion is the rate-determining step (as for the S_N 1 mechanism), and then the carbonium ion stabilises itself by elimination of a proton to form an olefin, the stability of which will be largely determined by the hyperconjugative effect.

Steric factors also appear to play a part in the direction of olefin formation. Thus Brown et al. (1953) have shown that potassium t.-butoxide gives 53.4 per cent. of (II), and potassium ethoxide 19 per cent. of (II). Brown et al. (1956) have also shown that in the molecule R·CH₂·CBr(CH₃)₂, as R increases in branching (methyl<ethyl<isopropyl<t.-butyl), a regular increase is obtained in the ratio of 1-/2-olefin in the product. These authors also showed that when the potassium salts of ethanol, t.-butanol, t.-pentanol and triethylmethanol are used with secondary and tertiary alkyl bromides, the yield of 1-olefin is increased from the left to the right alkoxide.

A point of interest here is that substitution and elimination often occur together. Experimental results have shown that for a given compound, the olefin yield is higher for the E2 mechanism than for the E1. Since a high concentration of the base with high nucleophilic power favours the E2 mechanism, olefin preparation is best carried out in concentrated solutions of strong bases. Furthermore, since ionising solvents favour the E1 mechanism, the preparation of olefins is best carried out in solvents with low ionising power. Thus ethanolic sodium hydroxide solution (solvent of low ionising power and a very strong base, OEt-) gives better olefin yield than does aqueous sodium hydroxide (solvent of high ionising power and a base, OH-, which is weaker than OEt-). Also, a base of weak nucleophilic power will have little affinity for hydrogen, and consequently olefin forma-

tion will be decreased and substitution encouraged. The acetate ion is a very weak base, and hence its use will give an ester as the main product rather than olefin. Thus the conversion of an alkyl halide into the alcohol is often best carried out via the ester, which is then hydrolysed.

6. When alkyl halides are heated with ethanolic ammonia under pressure,

a mixture of amines, i.e., substituted ammonias, is obtained, e.g.,

$$RX + NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + HX \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 \cdot HX$$
 or $[R \cdot NH_3] + X^-$

Only primary alkyl halides give good yields of amines; secondary—except isopropyl halide—and tertiary halides form mainly olefins.

7. When alkyl halides are heated with aqueous ethanolic potassium

cyanide, alkyl cyanides are obtained:

$$RX + KCN \longrightarrow RCN + KX$$

Tertiary alkyl cyanides cannot usually be prepared this way, since tertiary alkyl halides tend to eliminate hydrogen halide very readily when treated with potassium cyanide.

Alkyl cyanides are very important compounds, since they may be used

to prepare many other compounds, e.g., acids, amines, etc.

When alkyl halides are heated with aqueous ethanolic silver cyanide, cyanides and the isocyanides are formed:

$$RX + AgCN \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + AgX$$

 $RX + AgCN \longrightarrow R \cdot NC + AgX$

8. When alkyl halides are heated with an ethanolic solution of a silver salt, esters are obtained:

$$R \cdot CO_2Ag + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + AgX$$

The acid may be organic or inorganic. If the salt is silver nitrite two isomeric compounds are obtained, the *nitrite* (ester) and the *nitro*-compound:

9. When alkyl halides are heated with sodium alkoxides, *i.e.*, sodium derivatives of the alcohols, *ethers* are obtained. This is the *Williamson synthesis* (see p. 141):

$$RONa + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot R' + NaX$$

A modification of this reaction is to heat together an alkyl halide and an alcohol in the presence of *dry* silver oxide:

$$2ROH + 2R'I + Ag_2O \longrightarrow 2R\cdot O\cdot R' + 2AgI + H_2O$$

This reaction is known as the *Purdie method of alkylation*, and is very important in sugar chemistry.

10. Alkyl halides heated with aqueous ethanolic sodium hydrogen sulphide form thioalcohols:

$$RX + NaSH \longrightarrow RSH + NaX$$

II. Alkyl halides heated with an ethanolic solution of a mercaptide, i.e., a metallic derivative of a thioalcohol, form thioethers:

$$RX + R'SNa \longrightarrow R \cdot S \cdot R' + NaX$$

12. When alkyl halides are heated with sodium, potassium or ammonium sulphite, a sulphonate is formed. This is known as the Strecker reaction:

$$RX + Na_2SO_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_3Na + NaX$$

13. Alkyl halides may be used in the Friedel-Crafts reaction, e.g., benzene reacts with methyl iodide in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride to form toluene:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3I \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + HI$$

14. Alkyl halides are used to prepare Grignard reagents:

$$RX + Mg \xrightarrow{ether} R - Mg - X$$

Methyl chloride, CH₃Cl, is prepared industrially:

(i) By the action of hydrogen chloride on methanol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride:

$$CH_3OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_4} CH_3Cl + H_2O$$

(ii) By heating trimethylamine hydrochloride with hydrochloric acid under pressure:

$$(CH_3)_3N\cdot HCl + 3HCl \longrightarrow 3CH_3Cl + NH_4Cl$$

(iii) By chlorinating methane with chlorine diluted with nitrogen, the ratio by volume of CH₄: Cl₂: N₂ being 8:1:80. The reaction is carried out in the presence of partly reduced cupric chloride as catalyst. All four chloromethanes are obtained, the methyl chloride comprising 90 per cent. of the chlorine used:

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 + (N_2) \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl + (N_2) + (CH_2Cl_2 + CHCl_3 + CCl_4)$$

By adjusting the ratio of chlorine to methane, each chloromethane can be obtained as the main product.

Methyl chloride is a colourless gas, b.p. -24° . It is fairly soluble in water, and readily in ethanol. It is used in the manufacture of aniline dyes, as a refrigerating agent, local anæsthetic and as a fire extinguisher.

Methyl iodide, CH₃I, is prepared industrially:

(i) By warming a mixture of methanol and red phosphorus with iodine:

$$6CH_3OH + 2P + 3I_2 \longrightarrow 6CH_3I + 2H_3PO_3$$

(ii) By the action of methyl sulphate on potassium iodide solution in the presence of calcium carbonate:

$$KI + (CH_3)_2SO_4 \longrightarrow CH_3I + K(CH_3)SO_4$$
 (90–94%)

Methyl iodide is a sweet-smelling liquid, b.p. 42.5°. Since it is a liquid, it is easier to handle than methyl chloride, and so is used a great deal as a methylating agent in laboratory organic syntheses, but the chloride is used industrially, since it is cheaper.

Ethyl chloride, C₂H₅Cl, is prepared industrially:

(i) By the action of hydrogen chloride on ethanol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride:

$$C_2H_5OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} C_2H_5Cl + H_2O$$

(ii) By the addition of hydrogen chloride to ethylene (from cracked petroleum) in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$C_2H_4 + HCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_2H_5Cl$$

Ethyl chloride is a gas, b.p. 12.5°. It is used in the preparation of tetraethyl-lead, sulphonal, etc., and as a refrigerating agent.

DIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

General methods of preparation. gem-Dihalides may be prepared:

(i) By the action of phosphorus pentahalides on aldehydes or ketones; e.g., acetone gives isopropylidene chloride when treated with phosphorus pentachloride:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + PCl_5 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot CH_3 + POCl_3$$

(ii) By the addition of halogen acids to the acetylenes, e.g., ethylidene bromide from acetylene and hydrogen bromide:

$$\text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 = \text{CHBr} \xrightarrow{\text{HBr}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHBr}_2$$

vic-Dihalides may be prepared by the addition of halogen to olefins, e.g., propylene bromide from propylene and bromine:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2Br$$

The method of preparing an αω-dihalide is special to the particular halide, e.g., trimethylene bromide may be prepared by the addition of hydrogen bromide to allyl bromide at low temperatures:

$$CH_2\text{-}CH\text{-}CH_2Br + HBr \longrightarrow CH_2Br\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2Br$$

Oldham (1950), however, has found that aw-dibromides may be prepared by the action of bromine in carbon tetrachloride on the silver salt of a dibasic acid (cf. p. 105):

$$(CH_2)_n(CO_2Ag)_2 + 2Br_2 \longrightarrow Br \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot Br + 2AgBr + 2CO_2.$$

The yields are very good provided n is 5 or more.

General properties and reactions of the dihalides. The dihalides are sweetsmelling, colourless liquids. gem-Dihalides are not as reactive as the alkyl halides. It has been found that the polarity of the C-Cl bond decreases progressively from methyl chloride, methylene chloride, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride. Therefore the reactivity of chlorine decreases progressively in these compounds in the same order (i.e., from methyl chloride to carbon tetrachloride; cf. p. 105).

gem-Dihalides are hydrolysed by aqueous alkalis to the corresponding carbonyl compound (aldehyde or ketone), e.g., isopropylidene chloride

gives acetone:

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 + 2 \text{KOH} \longrightarrow 2 \text{KCl} + [\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C(OH)}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3] \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{H}_2 \text{O}$$

It has generally been found that a compound containing two (or more) hydroxyl groups attached to the same carbon atom is unstable, and readily eliminates a molecule of water (see p. 168).

gem-Dihalides give olefins when treated with zinc dust and methanol (p. 64), and acetylenes when treated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide

(p. 90).

vic- and αω-Dihalides are just as reactive as the alkyl halides. When heated with zinc and methanol, vic-dihalides give olefins (p. 64), but αωdihalides in which the two halogen atoms are in the I: 3 to the I: 6 positions give cyclic compounds, e.g., trimethylene bromide gives cyclopropane:

$$\text{CH}_2 \overset{\text{CH}_2\text{Br}}{\underset{\text{CH}_2\text{Br}}{\longleftarrow}} + \text{Zn} \overset{\text{CH}_2}{\longrightarrow} \text{CH}_2 \overset{\text{CH}_2}{\underset{\text{CH}_2}{\longleftarrow}} + \text{ZnBr}_2$$

vic-Di-iodides tend to eliminate iodine, particularly at raised temperatures, to form olefins, e.g., propylene iodide gives propylene:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CHI-CH}_2\text{I} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{I}_2$$

This property has been used to regenerate the double bond from vic-dichlorides or dibromides. These are heated with sodium iodide in ethanol, and the vic-diiodide formed decomposes into the olefin:

$$CBr \cdot CBr \leftarrow 2NaI \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} 2NaBr + [CI \cdot CI \leftarrow] \longrightarrow C=C \leftarrow I_2$$

Methylene chloride, CH₂Cl₂ (liquid, b.p. 40°), was formerly prepared industrially by partially reducing chloroform with zinc and hydrogen chloride in ethanolic solution:

$$CHCl_3 + 2[H] \longrightarrow CH_2Cl_2 + HCl$$

It is now also prepared industrially by the direct chlorination of methane

(see methyl chloride). It is used as an industrial solvent.

Methylene bromide, CH₂Br₂ (b.p. 97°), and methylene iodide, CH₂I₂ (b.p. 181°), are prepared by the partial reduction of bromoform and iodoform, respectively, with solution arsenite in alkaline solution (the yield of CH) Projectively. CH₂Br₂ is 88-90 per cent.; CH₂I₂, 90-97 per cent.), e.g.,

$$\mathrm{CHI_3} + \mathrm{Na_3AsO_3} + \mathrm{NaOH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2I_2} + \mathrm{NaI} + \mathrm{Na_3AsO_4}$$

All the methylene halides are used in organic syntheses.

Ethylene chloride, CH₂Cl·CH₂Cl (b.p. 84°), and ethylidene chloride, CH₃·CHCl₂ (b.p. 57°), are isomers; the former is prepared from ethylene and chlorine, and the latter by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on acetaldehyde (q.v.).

TRIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

The most important trihalogen derivatives are those of methane, and they are usually known by their trivial names: chloroform, CHCl₃, bromoform, CHBr₃ and iodoform, CHI₃.

Chloroform may be prepared in the laboratory or industrially by heating ethanol or acetone with bleaching powder, or with chlorine and alkali (yield about 40 per cent.). The reaction is extremely complicated, and the mechanism is obscure (see chloral, p. 168).

The equations usually given for the action of bleaching powder on ethanol are: (i) oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde; (ii) chlorination of acetaldehyde to trichloroacetaldehyde; (iii) decomposition of trichloroacetaldehyde (chloral) by free calcium hydroxide (present in the bleaching powder) into chloroform and formic acid:

(i) $CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHO + 2HCl$ (ii) $CH_3 \cdot CHO + 3Cl_2 \longrightarrow CCl_3 \cdot CHO + 3HCl$ (iii) $2CCl_3 \cdot CHO + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow 2CHCl_3 + (H \cdot CO_2)_2Ca$

When acetone is used, the first product given is trichloroacetone, which is then decomposed by the calcium hydroxide into chloroform and acetic acid:

(i)
$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + 3Cl_2 \longrightarrow CCl_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + 3HCl$$

(ii) $2CCl_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow 2CHCl_3 + (CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_2Ca$

Chloroform is also prepared industrially:

(i) By the chlorination of methane (see methyl chloride).

(ii) By the partial reduction of carbon tetrachloride with iron filings and water:

$$CCl_4 + 2[H] \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + HCl$$

When prepared this way chloroform is used for solvent purposes, and not for anæsthesia (see later).

Pure chloroform may be prepared by distilling chloral hydrate with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2 + NaOH \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + H \cdot CO_2Na + H_2O$$

Chloroform is a sickly, sweet-smelling, colourless liquid, b.p. 61°. It is sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol and ether. It does not burn in air under usual conditions, but its vapour may be ignited, when it burns with a green-edged flame. According to Hine (1950, 1954), chloroform (and other haloforms) undergoes alkaline hydrolysis to produce the formate ion and carbon monoxide by what Hine calls the alpha-elimination mechanism; this involves the removal of hydrogen and chloride ions from the same carbon atom.

The mechanism proposed is as follows, involving the intermediate formation of dichloromethylene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHCl}_3 + \text{OH}^- \Longrightarrow \text{:CCl}_3^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{:CCl}_3^- \longrightarrow \text{:CCl}_2 + \text{Cl}^- \\ \text{:CCl}_2 \xrightarrow[\text{H}_2\text{O}]{} \text{CO} + \text{HCO}_2^- \end{array}$$

Robinson (1961) has proposed, on kinetic evidence, that the intermediate dichloromethylene most likely decomposes to carbon monoxide as follows:

$$: CCl_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow H_2O \xrightarrow{-CCl_2} \xrightarrow{-H^+} HO \xrightarrow{-CCl_2} \xrightarrow{-Cl^-} HO - C \xrightarrow{-Cl} \xrightarrow{-Cl^-} CO$$

Formate is then formed as follows:

$$CO \xrightarrow{OH^-} H \cdot CO \cdot O^-$$

An interesting point about dichloromethylene is its reluctance to react with hydroxide ion.

When chloroform is treated with zinc and hydrogen chloride in ethanolic solution, methylene chloride (q.v.) is obtained; when treated with zinc and water, methane is obtained:

$$CHCl_3 + 6[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/H_4O} CH_4 + 3HCl$$

When chloroform is warmed with silver powder, acetylene is obtained:

$$2CHCl_3 + 6Ag \longrightarrow C_2H_2 + 6AgCl$$

When treated with concentrated nitric acid, chloroform forms chloropicrin:

$$CHCl_3 + HNO_3 \longrightarrow CCl_3 \cdot NO_2 + H_2O$$

Chloropicrin or nitrochloroform (liquid, b.p. 112°) is used as an insecticide, and has been used as a war-gas. Chloroform adds on to the carbonyl

group of ketones in the presence of potassium hydroxide, e.g., with acetone it forms *chloretone* (colourless needles, m.p. 97°), which is used as a drug:

$$(CH_3)_2C = O + CHCl_3 \xrightarrow{KOH} (CH_3)_2C(OH) \cdot CCl_3$$

Chloroform is employed in surgery as an anæsthetic, and for this purpose it should be pure. In the presence of air and light, chloroform slowly forms carbonyl chloride, which is extremely poisonous:

$$CHCl_3 + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow COCl_2 + HCl$$

Chlorine, water and carbon dioxide are also produced. Anæsthetic chloroform is therefore kept in well-stoppered dark-brown or blue bottles. Ethanol is also added (I per cent.), but its function is not quite clear. According to some authors, it retards the decomposition of the chloroform. This is supported by the fact that infra-red measurements of such mixtures show the absence of the carbonyl frequency.

A delicate test for chloroform is the "isocyanide test". This is carried out by heating chloroform with ethanolic potassium hydroxide and aniline, whereby phenyl isocyanide is formed, and is readily detected by its nauseat-

ing odour:

$$CHCl_3 + 3KOH + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NC + 3KCl + 3H_2O$$

Chloroform is widely used in industry as a solvent for fats, waxes, resins,

Bromoform may be prepared by methods similar to those used for chloroform, but it is prepared industrially by the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of acetone or ethanol containing sodium carbonate and potassium bromide (acetone gives a better yield than ethanol). The solution is maintained at about 20°, and hydrobromic acid is run in to neutralise the sodium hydroxide produced during the electrolysis. Bromine is set free at the anode, and probably reacts in the same way as does chlorine in the preparation of chloroform.

Bromoform is a liquid, b.p. 149.5°, and smells like chloroform, which it

closely resembles chemically.

Iodoform is prepared industrially by the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of ethanol or acetone containing sodium carbonate and potassium iodide (ethanol gives a better yield than acetone). The solution is maintained at 60-70°, and a current of carbon dioxide is passed through the solution to neutralise the sodium hydroxide formed.

Iodoform crystallises in yellow hexagonal plates, m.p. 119°. It is insoluble in water, but is readily soluble in ethanol and ether. It is used as an antiseptic, but its antiseptic properties are due to the liberation of free iodine, and not to iodoform itself. Iodoform chemically resembles chloro-

form and bromoform.

POLYHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

Carbon tetrachloride, CCl₄, is prepared industrially in several ways:

(i) By the action of chlorine on carbon disulphide in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$CS_2 + 3Cl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} CCl_4 + S_2Cl_2$$

The sulphur monochloride is removed by fractional distillation, and the carbon tetrachloride is then shaken with sodium hydroxide, and finally distilled.

(ii) By the chlorination of methane (see methyl chloride).

(iii) By chlorinolysis. This term was suggested by McBee, Hass and coworkers (1941) to describe the process of chlorinating an organic compound under conditions which rupture the carbon-carbon bond to yield chlorocompounds with fewer carbon atoms than the original compound. Chlorinolysis may be effected with or without a catalyst, e.g., the hydrocarbon and chlorine are heated at high temperature (300–400°) and under high pressure (about 1000 lb./sq. in.). The product is usually a mixture, e.g., propane gives both carbon tetrachloride and hexachloroethane:

$$C_3H_8 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} CCl_4 + C_2Cl_6$$

Carbon tetrachloride is a colourless liquid, b.p. 77°, which has a sickly smell. It is insoluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol and ether. Since its vapour is non-inflammable, carbon tetrachloride is widely used as an industrial solvent (for fats, oils, resins, lacquers, etc.). It is also used as a fire-extinguisher under the name of *Pyrene*.

Carbon tetrachloride is stable at red heat (about 500°), but when its vapour comes into contact with water vapour at this temperature, some carbonyl chloride is formed:

$$CCl_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow COCl_2 + 2HCl$$

Hence after using pyrene to extinguish a fire, the room should be well ventilated.

Carbon tetrachloride is reduced by moist iron filings to chloroform (q.v.). The alkaline hydrolysis of carbon tetrachloride gives the same products (formate and carbon monoxide) as chloroform, but the rate of reaction is slower (Hine, 1954).

Tetrachloroethane or acetylene tetrachloride, CHCl₂·CHCl₂, is prepared by passing acetylene and chlorine into chambers filled with a mixture of kieselguhr and iron filings. This method is used since the combination of acetylene and chlorine is usually explosive unless a catalyst (and preferably a diluent) is present.

Acetylene tetrachloride is a very toxic, colourless liquid, b.p. 146°. It smells like chloroform; it is non-inflammable, and hence is widely used, under the name of *Westron*, as a solvent for oils, fats, paints, varnishes, rubber, etc.

When passed over heated barium chloride as catalyst, acetylene tetrachloride eliminates a molecule of hydrogen chloride to form trichloroethylene:

$$\text{CHCl}_2\text{-}\text{CHCl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{BaCl}_2} \text{CHCl} \xrightarrow{\text{CCl}_2} + \text{HCl}$$

Trichloroethylene is a colourless liquid, b.p. 88-90°. It smells like chloroform, and is non-inflammable. It is more stable and less toxic than acetylene tetrachloride, and hence is more widely used as an industrial solvent, under the name of *Westrosol*, than *Westron*.

Hexachloroethane (perchloroethane), C₂Cl₆, may be prepared:

(i) By the chlorinolysis of propane (see carbon tetrachloride).
 (ii) By passing ethylene mixed with 10 per cent. excess of chlorine through a pyrex tube packed with activated charcoal at 300-350°:

$$C_2H_4 + 5Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_2Cl_6 + 4HCl$$

The excess chlorine prevents the formation of lower chlorinated products.

(iii) By passing a mixture of acetylene tetrachloride and chlorine over aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$C_2H_2Cl_4 + 2Cl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_2Cl_6 + 2HCl$$

(iv) By treating trichloroethylene with chlorine and passing the pentachloroethane so produced over heated barium chloride, thus forming tetrachloroethylene, which, in turn, gives hexachloroethane when treated with chlorine:

$$\text{CHCl} = \text{CCl}_2 + \text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CHCl}_2 \cdot \text{CCl}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{BaCl}_2} \text{CCl}_2 = \text{CCl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_3} \cdot \text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CCl}_3$$

Hexachloroethane is a solid, m.p. 187°. It smells like camphor and is used as a substitute for it.

s-Dichloroethylene, CHCl=CHCl, may be prepared by the action of finely divided zinc on acetylene tetrachloride in the presence of water:

$$\text{CHCl}_2\text{•CHCl}_2 + 2[\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/H}_2\text{O}} \text{CHCl} \Rightarrow \text{CHCl} + 2\text{HCl}$$

It is a liquid and exists in two forms, the cis, b.p. 60°, and trans, b.p. 48° (see p. 427 for the meanings of cis and trans).

Dichloroethylene is used as a rubber solvent.

The halogen atom in the group —CHX is very unreactive (see p. 266). An important property of the chlorinated unsaturated hydrocarbons is their ability to add on chloroform or carbon tetrachloride in the presence of aluminium chloride, as catalyst, e.g., dichloroethylene forms 1:1:1:2:3:3-hexachloropropane with carbon tetrachloride:

$$CHCl = CHCl + CCl_4 \xrightarrow{AlCl_2} CHCl_2 \cdot CHCl_2 \cdot CHCl_3$$

Paraffin wax has been chlorinated, and the products are used for dielectric materials, protective coatings for fabrics, etc. Polychloro-derivatives of ethane, propane and butadiene are used as dielectric materials, solvents (non-inflammable), insecticides, plasticisers, etc.

FLUORINE DERIVATIVES OF THE PARAFFINS

Most organic compounds burn or explode when treated with fluorine gas. Carbon heated in fluorine is attacked, sometimes explosively, with the formation of mainly CF_4 , and small amounts of C_2F_6 , C_2F_4 , C_3F_8 and some other products.

Aliphatic fluorine compounds may be obtained in several ways:

(i) Direct fluorination of hydrocarbons may be carried out successfully by diluting the fluorine with nitrogen, and carrying out the reaction in a metal tube packed with copper gauze at a temperature of 150–350°. It is very difficult to control the fluorination, and the product is usually a complex mixture, e.g., methane gives CH₃F, CH₂F₂, CHF₃, CF₄, C₂F₆ and C₃F₈; ethane gives CF₄, C₂F₆, CH₃·CHF₂, CH₂F·CHF₂; no mono- or s-diffuoro-ethane is obtained.

When catalysts other than copper (actually CuF_2) are used, e.g., AgF, CoF_2 , CeF_3 , MnF_2 , perfluoro-compounds are obtained, e.g., n-heptane gives perfluoroheptane:

$$\begin{array}{c} 2\text{AgF} + \text{F}_{2} \longrightarrow 2\text{AgF}_{2} \\ \text{C}_{7}\text{H}_{16} \stackrel{\text{AgF}_{3}}{\longrightarrow} \text{C}_{7}\text{F}_{16} \end{array}$$

It appears that when a catalyst is used, the perfluoro-compound obtained usually has the same number of carbon atoms as the original compound; if no catalyst is used, fluoro-compounds with fewer carbon atoms are usually obtained.

The mechanism of direct fluorination is still obscure, but it appears that the first step is the conversion of the catalyst into a higher fluoride, e.g., AgF into AgF₂; CoF₂ into CoF₃, etc. Some of these higher fluorides have been isolated, e.g., AgF₂.

(ii) Olefins and acetylenes add on hydrogen fluoride under pressure to form fluoro-derivatives of the paraffins, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_4 + HF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F \quad (\textit{f.g.-g.}) \\ CH_3 \cdot C \equiv CH + 2HF \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CF_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (\textit{f.g.-g.}) \end{array}$$

If the unsaturated compound contains a halogen atom (other than fluorine), this atom may be replaced by fluorine, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{R-CCl==CH}_2 + \text{HF} & \longrightarrow \text{R-CFcl-CH}_3 \\ \text{R-CCl==CH}_2 + 2 \text{HF} & \longrightarrow \text{R-CF}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

Lead tetrafluoride (from lead dioxide and hydrogen fluoride) is particularly useful for introducing two fluorine atoms into an olefin containing chlorine, e.g.,

$$CCl_2 = CCl_2 + PbF_4 \xrightarrow{25^{\circ}} CFCl_2 \cdot CFCl_2 + PbF_2$$

It is also possible to add fluorine directly without a catalyst to highly halogenated olefins, e.g.,

$$CFCl = CFCl + F_2 \longrightarrow CF_2Cl \cdot CF_2Cl$$

(iii) By treating an alcohol with hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5OH + HF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F + H_2O$$

This reaction is very little used in practice. On the other hand, alkyl fluorides may be prepared by heating alkyl toluene-p-sulphonates with potassium fluoride (Bergmann et al., 1958).

(iv) Fluorine compounds may be prepared indirectly by heating organic halides with inorganic fluorides such as AsF₃, SbF₃, AgF, Hg₂F₂, etc., e.g.,

$$C_2H_5Cl + AgF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F + AgCl$$
 (ex.)

This method was first used by Swarts (1898), and so is known as the Swarts reaction.

When the organic halide contains two or three halogen atoms attached to the same carbon atom, the best yield of fluoride is obtained when CoF₃ is used, but SbF₃ gives yields almost as good (and is more accessible), e.g.,

$$3CH_3 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot CH_3 + 2SbF_3 \longrightarrow 3CH_3 \cdot CF_2 \cdot CH_3 + 2SbCl_3 \quad (v.g.)$$

Alternatively, hydrogen fluoride may be used under pressure in the presence of a catalyst, e.g.,

$$CCl_4 \xrightarrow{HF:300^{\circ}} CF_2Cl_2 + CFCl_3$$

(v) A newer method of fluorination is the direct electrolytic method. Nickel electrodes are used, and electrochemical fluorination takes place at the anode, the reaction being carried out by the electrolysis of a solution of the organic compound in anhydrous hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 H} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CF_3 \cdot COF} \\ \mathrm{C_2 H_5 \cdot O \cdot C_2 H_5} \longrightarrow \mathrm{C_2 H_5 \cdot O \cdot C_2 F_5} \end{array}$$

The particular merit of this method is that it usually leaves untouched many types of functional groups.

Sulphur tetrafluoride is a very useful fluorinating agent, since it replaces oxygen atoms by fluorine; thus:

$$R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{SF_4} R \cdot CF_3$$
; $R_2CO \longrightarrow R_2CF_2$; $ROH \longrightarrow RF$

The lower *n*-alkyl fluorides are gases. The first four members are stable, and the higher members tend to decompose spontaneously into olefin and hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 + HF$$

Secondary and tertiary alkyl fluorides are so unstable that it is impossible to prepare them free from olefin.

vic-Difluorides are also usually unstable, e.g., ethylene fluoride decomposes spontaneously at o° into hydrogen fluoride and butadiene:

$$_{2}CH_{2}F \cdot CH_{2}F \longrightarrow _{4}HF + CH_{2} \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CH_{2}$$

Alkyl fluorides are readily hydrolysed by strong acids to the corresponding alcohols; alkalis have no effect. On the other hand, ethylene fluoride is immediately hydrolysed by water to glycol:

$$CH_2F \cdot CH_2F + 2H_2O \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH + 2HF$$

Fluorides with two or three fluorine atoms on the same carbon atom are stable to water and strong acids, e.g., CHF₃, CHF₂·CHF₂, etc.

Alkyl fluorides do not react with sodium, i.e., do not undergo the Wurtz reaction, and do not form Grignard reagents. An interesting compound is trifluoromethyl iodide, CF₃I. It is converted into fluoroform, CHF₃, by potassium hydroxide, and it combines directly with many non-metals such as P, As, Sb, S, Se, to give, e.g., with phosphorus, (CF₃)₃P, (CF₃)₂PI and CF3.PI2.

Chlorofluoro-derivatives of methane and ethane are used as refrigerants and for air-conditioning under the name of Freons, which are prepared by the action of hydrogen fluoride on carbon tetrachloride, chloroform and hexachloroethane.

Tetrafluoroethylene, C₂F₄ (gas), is prepared by the action of antimony trifluoride and hydrogen fluoride on chloroform, and then heating the chlorodifluoromethane so produced at 800°:

$$\text{CHCl}_3 \xrightarrow[\text{HF}]{\text{SbF}_8} \text{CHF}_2 \text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{800}^{\circ}} \text{C}_2 \text{F}_4 + 2 \text{HCl} + \text{other products}$$

When tetrafluoroethylene is polymerised, the plastic Teflon is produced. Teflon is difficult to work, but is inert to chemical reagents, even to boiling aqua regia.

Polychlorofluoroethylenes are valuable as oils and greases. Perfluoroheptane is useful in a process for the separation of uranium isotopes by gaseous diffusion.

QUESTIONS

- I. Write out the structures and names of all the dichloro-derivatives of butane and
- 2. By means of equations show how you would convert ethanol into: (a) trichloroethylene, (b) hexachloroethane, (c) s-dichloroethylene, (d) tetrachloroethylene, (e) pentachloroethane.

- pentachloroethane.

 3. Name the products and state the conditions under which they are obtained when ethyl iodide reacts with: (a) HI, (b) KCN, (c) KOH, (d) H₂, (e) Mg, (f) Na, (g) NH₃, (h) AgCN, (i) NaNO₂, (j) AgNO₂, (k) NaHSO₃, (l) C₆H₆.

 4. Name the products and state the conditions under which they are obtained when chloroform reacts with (a) nascent hydrogen, (b) KOH, (c) C₆H₅NH₂, (d) O₂, (e) Ag, (f) HNO₃, (g) CH₃·CO·CH₃, (h) CHCl=CHCl.

 5. Define and give examples of:—(a) halogenation, (b) chain reaction, (c) Strecker reaction, (d) Darzens procedure, (e) molecular rearrangement, (f) elimination reaction, (g) alkylation, (h) Williamson synthesis, (i) Friedel-Crafts reaction, (j) Grignard reagent, (k) hyperconjugation, (l) chlorinolysis, (m) Swarts reaction.

 6. Discuss (i) the inductive effect of the alkyl group, (ii) S_N and E mechanisms, (iii) steric hindrance and steric acceleration, (iv) Saytzeff's rule.
- steric hindrance and steric acceleration, (iv) Saytzeff's rule.

READING REFERENCES

Hass, McBee et al., Chlorination of Paraffins, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1935, 27, 1190; 1936, 28,

333; 1941, 33, 137, 176, 181, 185; 1943, 35, 317.

Vaughan and Rust, Chlorination of Paraffins, J. Org. Chem., 1940, 5, 449.

Fredricks and Tedder, Free-radical Substitution in Aliphatic Compounds, J.C.S., 1960,

Bethell and Gold, The Structure of Carbonium Ions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958,

12, 173.

Brown, Sulphuryl Chloride in Organic Chemistry, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1944, 36, 787.

Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. II (1944), Ch. 2. The Preparation of Aliphatic Fluorine Compounds.

Bigelow, Action of Fluorine upon Organic Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1947, 40, 51.

Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1954, 51, 279. Perfluoroalkyl Compounds. Cook (Ed.), Progress in Organic Chemistry, Butterworths. Vol. 2 Organic Fluorine Compounds. Vol. 2 (1953). Ch. 2.

Organic Fluorine Compounds.

Musgrave, The Reactions of Organic Fluorine Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1954, 8, 331.

Stacey et al. (Eds.), Advances in Fluorine Chemistry, Butterworths. Vol. 1 (1960).

Hughes, Reactions of Halides in Solution, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 245.

Clark and Streight, Systematic Study of the Preparation of Alkyl Chlorides from the Corresponding Alcohols, Trans. Roy. Soc., Can., 1929, [3], 23, 77.

Huntress, Organic Chlorine Compounds, Wiley (1949).

Johnson, The Degradation of Carboxylic Acids by means of Halogen: The Hunsdiecker

Reaction, Chem. Reviews, 1956, 56, 219.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. IX (1957), Ch. 5. The Reaction of Halogens with Silver Salts of Carboxylic Acids.

Streitwieser, Solvolytic Displacement Reactions at Saturated Carbon Atoms, Chem. Reviews, 1956, 56, 571.